

# 点金训练

## 教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

► 英语

必修 第一册

配外研版



四川教育出版社



# CONTENTS

## 目录

### Unit 1 A new start

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	2
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	5
Section III	Using language .....	10
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	15
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	19
读后续写概述 .....		25

### Unit 2 Exploring English

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	28
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	32
Section III	Using language .....	36
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	43
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	47
读后续写技能养成 .....		60

### Unit 3 Family matters

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	62
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	66
Section III	Using language .....	71
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	79
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	82
读后续写技能养成 .....		88



## Unit 4 Friends forever

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	90
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	93
Section III	Using language .....	97
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	102
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	105
读后续写技能养成.....		119

## Unit 5 Into the wild

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	121
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	125
Section III	Using language .....	129
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	133
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	136
读后续写技能养成.....		141

## Unit 6 At one with nature

---

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending .....	143
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points .....	147
Section III	Using language .....	151
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending .....	158
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points .....	161
读后续写技能养成.....		174

Unit 1 A new start

主题语境

人与自我——高中阶段的学习与生活

必背 单词	senior, curious, impression, campus, tradition, facility, impressive, moment, author, eagerness, explore, engine, insect, collection, organise, breathe, panic, challenge, pressure, calm, description, confident, poster, badminton, band, debate, gym, piano, stage, argue, topic, sharp, dinosaur, dolphin, intelligent, investigate, various, volunteer, gain, apply, schedule, award, opportunity, view, former, graduate, frightened, sight, figure, select, particular, neat, specific, refer, journal, junior, struggle, memorise, forward, committee, improve, rate, performance, exchange
重点 表达	one by one, butterflies in one's stomach, in panic, put... under pressure, depend on, make the most of, graduate from, be about to do, keep an open mind, deal with, at the sight of, go all out, hold one's head up, in particular, give... a hand, refer to
重点 知识	1. be doing... when... 2. so... that... 引导结果状语从句
单元 语法	基本句型
单元 写作	有关高中生活的日记
主题 美文 赏读	<p>I know I'll have to study harder as a senior high school student and get used to being responsible for a lot more. I'm a bit worried about keeping up with the other students in my advanced course, and it'll be quite difficult to get used to all the homework. Still, I'm happy to be here. Studying hard isn't always fun, but I'll be well prepared for university or whatever else comes in the future.</p> <p>我知道作为高中生我得更加努力学习,习惯于承担更多责任。我有点担心在高级课程上无法跟上其他同学,而且要适应所有的家庭作业也相当困难。然而,我还是很高兴来到这里。努力学习并不总是有趣,但我会为未来上大学或是任何其他事情做好充分准备。</p>

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

## 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. senior *adj.* (地位、水平或级别) 高的, 高级的
2. curious *adj.* 好奇的
3. impression *n.* 印象, 感想
4. campus *n.* 校园
5. tradition *n.* 传统
6. impressive *adj.* 令人钦佩的, 给人深刻印象的
7. eagerness *n.* 热切, 渴望
8. explore *v.* 考察, 探险
9. collection *n.* (一批) 收藏品
10. organise *v.* 组织
11. breathe *v.* 呼吸
12. challenge *n.* 挑战
13. calm *adj.* 镇静的, 沉着的
14. description *n.* 描述, 描写, 叙述, 形容

15. confident *adj.* 有信心的, 自信的

16. moment *n.* 某一时刻

17. depend on 取决于; 依靠

18. make the most of 充分利用

19. senior high 高中

20. one by one 依次地, 一个接一个地

(二) 阅读词汇

1. facility *n.* 设施

2. author *n.* 作者, 作家

3. engine *n.* 发动机, 引擎

4. insect *n.* 昆虫

5. nudge *n.* (通常用肘) 轻推

6. butterflies in one's stomach 情绪紧张, 心里发慌

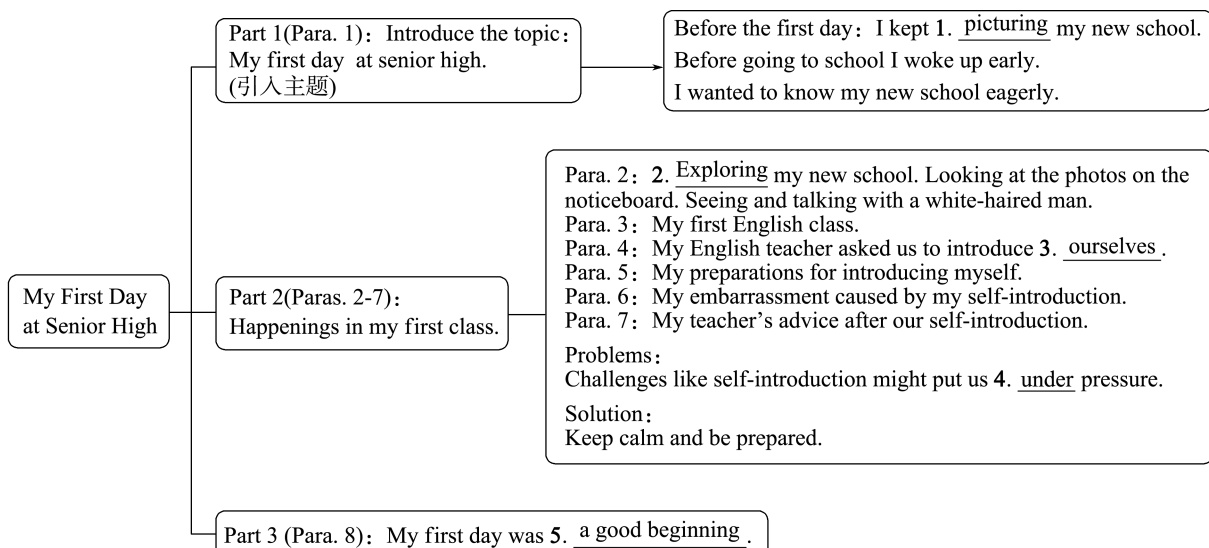
7. in panic 惊慌地

8. put... under pressure 使……处于压力之下

## 多维化析文

### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### ▶ 文本细节领悟

**Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text**

1. The phrase “with butterflies in my stomach” means “\_\_\_\_\_”.

- A. I felt sick
- B. I was angry
- C. I was happy
- D. I was nervous

答案:D

2. What made everyone laugh when Meng Hao was introducing himself?

- A. His humorous words.
- B. His strange behaviours.
- C. He shared the same name with their English teacher.
- D. He stood there quietly without saying a word to the whole class.

答案:C

3. The proverb “Well begun, half done.” means “\_\_\_\_\_”.

- A. A good beginning is very important.
- B. Only working hard at the beginning is enough.
- C. The beginning is more important than the ending.
- D. We should only pay attention to the beginning of a thing.

答案:A

### ▶ 语言知识运用

**Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text**

After I **1. had pictured** (picture) it over and over again in my mind, my first day at senior high finally arrived! I woke up early and rushed out of the door **2. eagerly** (eager) to my new school.

The campus was still quiet when I arrived, so I decided to explore a bit. I **3. was looking** (look) at the photos on the noticeboard when I heard a voice behind me. **4. Turning** (turn) around, I saw a white-haired man. When my English teacher stepped into the classroom, I was **5. surprised** (surprise) to see the same man I had met earlier. He asked all of

us to introduce **6. ourselves** (we) to the class.

When I introduced my name, everyone started laughing. Finally, I realised that I shared the same name **7. with** the teacher. I had been too nervous **8. to pay** (pay) attention when he introduced himself! The teacher said, “I know this isn’t easy for many of you. But this is just the kind of thing **9. that/which** you are going to face at senior high. Challenges like this might sometimes put you under pressure. But it all depends **10. on** what you do. Keep calm and be prepared. That way, you’ll make the most of your time at senior high.”

**Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them**

1. The campus was still quiet when I arrived, so I decided to explore a bit.

[句子分析]本句是并列复合句。so 前的分句为复合句,when I arrived 为 when 引导的时间状语从句;so 后的分句为简单句。

[尝试翻译]我到学校时,校园里仍然悄然无声,所以我决定探索一下。

2. When my English teacher stepped into the classroom, I was surprised to see the same man I had met earlier.

[句子分析]When 引导时间状语从句,to see the same man I had met earlier 为动词不定式短语在句中作原因状语,I had met earlier 为省略关系代词 that 的定语从句,其先行词为 man,被 the same 修饰。

[尝试翻译]当我的英语老师走进教室时,我很惊讶地看到他就是我之前遇到的那个人。

### ▶ 思维品质培养

**Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions**

1. What do you think of Meng Hao’s English teacher? (no more than 5 words)

He is kind and humorous.

2. What kind of teachers do you like best? (Answers may vary.)

He/She should be knowledgeable and have a good way of making his/her lessons lively and interesting.

## 课后素养评价(一)

## I. 阅读理解

When I woke up on September 1, there was only one thing on my mind: what to wear. A billion thoughts appeared through my brain in the closet (衣橱). Not only was it my first day of senior high school, but it was my first day of school in a new state; first impressions are everything, and it was important for me to impress the people who I would spend the next four years with.

After carefully hunting my closet, I proudly came out in a dress. The soft cotton was comfortable, and the specially designed shoulders added a little of fun. Yes, this cloth was the one. An hour later, I felt powerful as I headed toward Room 1136. But as I entered class, my jaw dropped to the floor.

Sitting at her desk was Mrs Hutfilz, my English teacher, wearing exactly the same dress as me. I kept my head down and tiptoed (踮着脚尖) to my seat. I made it through my simple introduction speech until Mrs Hutfilz stood up, jokingly saying that she liked my style. Although this was the moment I had been afraid of from the moment I walked in, all my anxiety surprisingly melted away, and the students paid attention as I shared my story. My smile grew as I laughed with the students. After class, I stayed behind, talked to Mrs Hutfilz and make a humorous and real communication.

Looking back four years later, the ten minutes I spent afraid of giving my speech was really not worth it. My first period of high school certainly made the day unforgettable in the best way and taught me that Mrs Hutfilz has a brilliant sense of style!

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在高中第一天的难忘的经历。

1. Why did the author pay great attention to her clothes on the first day of high school?
  - A. She followed her father's advice.
  - B. She was unconfident about herself.
  - C. She cared too much about her appearance.
  - D. She wanted to make a good impression.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“first impressions are everything, and it was important for me to impress the people who I would spend the next four years with”可知,作者在高中的第一天非常注意她的穿着是因为她想给人留下一个好印象。故选D。

2. Which of the following statements is TRUE?

- A. It was her first day of primary school.
- B. She was satisfied with her first day dress.
- C. Her teacher was unhappy because she wore the same dress with her.
- D. She made a conversation with her English teacher in class.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The soft cotton was comfortable, and the specially designed shoulders added a little of fun.”可知,作者对她第一天的穿着很满意。故选B。

3. What's the author's feeling after noticing her teacher's dress?

- A. Anger.
- B. Confusion.
- C. Pride.
- D. Embarrassment.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“But as I entered class, my jaw dropped to the floor.”及第三段中的“Sitting at her desk was Mrs Hutfilz, my English teacher, wearing exactly the same dress as me. I kept my head down and tiptoed (踮着脚尖) to my seat.”可推知,注意到老师的着装和自己的一样后,作者感到很尴尬。故选D。

4. What is the author's purpose in writing the article?

- A. To share a memorable experience.
- B. To explore the troubles with dressing.
- C. To introduce her stylish English teacher.
- D. To stress the importance of first impressions.

A 写作意图题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的“My first period of high school certainly made the day unforgettable in the best way”可推知,本文讲述了作者在高中第一天难忘的经历,因此作者写这篇文章的目的是要分享一段难忘的经历。故选A。



II. 七选五

How to Adjust to a New School

School is a child's base where they learn to succeed. Adjusting to a new school can be scary. When you go to a new school, you might worry that you don't know anyone or that you won't fit in. You worry that you might get lost or if the teachers are strict. 1

Get to know the school.

Take a tour of your school. 2 Find out where your classroom will be, as well as the cafeteria, auditorium, gym and other important places.

Meet your teachers.

Meeting your teachers before you start school will help you make a smooth adjustment to the new school. 3 Being friendly with your teachers will help. Find out some key facts about them, such as what subject they teach and their names, etc.

4

Knowing the school's policies ahead of time will help make it easier to fit in. Get the school handbook. Read through it with your parents so that

they can explain policies that might sound confusing to you. If your new school doesn't have a handbook, read the rules and the school diary to get used to what is expected. The school handbook might also have some interesting facts about the school, which can help you get acquainted with its history, the students and the teachers.

Know the school year calendar.

It will be helpful to know when vacation days are scheduled as well as half-days and special days like field days or carnivals. Mark these dates on a calendar in your room. 5

- A. Read the school handbook.
- B. Take part in after-school activities.
- C. Introduce yourself to them and smile at them.
- D. Knowing about your school can make this transition (过渡) easier.
- E. Before you start school, go with your parents to visit the school.
- F. You'll find that you're making friends and life is getting easier.
- G. This will help you expect when you have a short day of school or a day off.

答案:1~5 DECAG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. There are two teaching buildings, a library and a lab in our **campus**. 校园
- 2. Finally, the man became ill under the great **pressure** of work. 压力
- 3. The **author** has settled for a more academic approach. 作者, 作家
- 4. It is difficult for most people to keep **calm** in the face of danger. 镇静的, 沉着的
- 5. After studying at junior high school for three years, most of the students will go on studying at **senior** high school. (地位、水平或级别)高的, 高级的
- 6. The car broke down on the road because there was something wrong with the **engine**. 发动机, 引擎

- 7. The hotel has special **facilities** for disabled people to use. 设施
- 8. Guests **panicked** and screamed when the great fire broke out. 惊恐, 惊慌

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>curious</u> <i>adj.</i> 好奇的	<u>curiously</u> <i>adv.</i> 好奇地
	<u>curiosity</u> <i>n.</i> 好奇心
<u>impression</u> <i>n.</i> 印象, 感想	<u>impressive</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人钦佩的, 给人深刻印象的
	<u>impress</u> <i>v.</i> 给……留下深刻印象

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>tradition</u> <i>n.</i> 传统	<u>traditional</u> <i>adj.</i> 传统的, 习俗的
	<u>traditionally</u> <i>adv.</i> 传统地
<u>explore</u> <i>v.</i> 考察, 探险	<u>explorer</u> <i>n.</i> 探险家, 勘探者
	<u>exploration</u> <i>n.</i> 探测, 探索
<u>organise</u> <i>v.</i> 组织	<u>organised</u> <i>adj.</i> 有组织的; 有条理的
	<u>organisation</u> <i>n.</i> 组织
<u>challenge</u> <i>n.</i> 挑战	<u>challenging</u> <i>adj.</i> 有挑战性的
<u>confident</u> <i>adj.</i> 有信心的, 自信的	<u>confidence</u> <i>n.</i> 信心; 信任
	<u>confidently</u> <i>adv.</i> 确信地, 肯定地; 自信地

III. 补全短语

1. turn around 转身
2. step into 迈进, 步入
3. one by one 依次地, 一个接一个地
4. turn on 打开(水、电视、收音机、灯、煤气等); 发动
5. butterflies in one's stomach 情绪紧张, 心里发慌

6. in panic 惊慌地
7. pay attention 专心; 集中注意力
8. put sb. under pressure 使某人处于压力之下
9. depend on 取决于; 依赖
10. make the most of 充分利用

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: be doing... when...  
I was looking at the photos on the noticeboard when I heard a voice behind me, “New here?”  
我正在浏览公告牌上的照片, 身后忽然传来一个声音: “你是新生吗?”
2. 句型公式: 感叹句  
How true these words were!  
这些话说得真是太对了!
3. 句型公式: with 复合结构  
With butterflies in my stomach, I breathed deeply.  
心里七上八下、紧张万分, 我深吸了一口气。
4. 句型公式: too... to...  
I had been too nervous to pay attention when he introduced himself!  
我刚才太紧张了, 竟然没有仔细听他(老师)的自我介绍!

任务型课堂

1. curious *adj.* 好奇的

[归纳拓展]

- (1) be curious about sth. 对某事感到好奇  
be curious to do sth. 极想做某事
- (2) curiously *adv.* 好奇地
- (3) curiosity *n.* 好奇心  
out of curiosity 出于好奇  
meet/satisfy one's curiosity 满足某人的好奇心  
with curiosity = curiously 好奇地

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① “What have you got there?” Felix asked curiously (curious).
- ② It is children's nature to be curious about the people and things around them.
- ③ I'm curious to know (know) how many satellites have been sent to space up to now.
- ④ Out of curiosity (curious), the man followed the guide into the hall.

2. impression *n.* 印象, 感想

[教材原文] What was your first **impression** of your new school?

你对你的新学校的第一印象是什么样的?

[归纳拓展]

- (1) first impression of... 对……的第一印象  
leave/have/make a/an... impression on sb. 给某人留下……的印象
- (2) impress *v.* 给……留下深刻印象  
impress sb. with sth. 某事给某人留下印象  
impress sth. on/upon sb. 使某人铭记某事; 使某人明白某事物的重要性  
be impressed with/by... 对……有深刻印象
- (3) impressive *adj.* 令人钦佩的, 给人深刻印象的

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① He was trying to leave a deeper impression on the new friend by giving a very impressive performance. (impress)

- ②The young man impressed the importance of honesty on/upon me.
- ③Punishment seemed to make no impression (impress) on the child.
- ④On arriving at the teahouse, the foreign students were impressed with/by the unique teapots and teacups.

3. breathe v. 呼吸

[教材原文] With butterflies in my stomach, I **breathed** deeply.

心里七上八下、紧张万分,我深吸了一口气。

[归纳拓展]

(1)breathe in 吸气

breathe out 呼气

(2)breath n. 呼吸的空气;一口气

take a deep breath 深呼吸

out of breath 气喘吁吁,上气不接下气

hold one's breath 屏住呼吸

lose one's breath 喘不过气来

(3)breathless adj. 气喘吁吁的;喘不过气来的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

I like getting up early in the morning. You know the morning air is so good to breathe (breath).

(2)完成句子

① The doctor made me breathe in while he listened to my chest.

医生给我听胸部时,叫我吸气。

②He took a deep breath, and began to climb the stairs.

他深吸了一口气,然后开始爬楼梯。

③He spoke so fast that he was out of breath.

他说得那么快,都喘不过气来了。

4. be doing... when...

[教材原文] I **was looking at** the photos on the noticeboard **when** I heard a voice behind me. "New here?"

我正在浏览公告牌上的照片,身后忽然传来一个声音:“你是新生吗?”

[句式分析] 本句中 was looking... when... 为“sb. was/were doing sth. when...”句型,意为“某人正在做某事,这时……”,其中 when 为并列连词,相当于 at that time,意为“这时”,when 连接的分句一般用一般过去时。

[归纳拓展]

when 用作连词的其他句型:

(1)sb. be about to do sth. when...

=sb. be on the point of doing sth. when... 某人正打算做某事,这时……

(2)had just done... when... 刚做完……这时(突然)……

[即学即练]

(1)完成句子

① One Friday, we were cleaning the kitchen when my daughter heard cries for help.

一个周五,我们正在打扫厨房的时候女儿听到呼救声。

② I had just finished my homework when my mother asked me to practise playing the piano yesterday.

昨天我刚完成作业,妈妈就让我练习弹钢琴。

(2)一句多译

汤姆正要关窗户,这时一只小鸟吸引了他的注意。

①Tom was about to close the window when his attention was caught by a bird. (be about to)

②Tom was on the point of closing the window when his attention was caught by a bird. (be on the point of)

多义词汇专练

1. calm

A. adj. 镇定的;沉着的

B. v. 使镇定

C. n. 泰然自若

①Have some tea; it'll **calm** your nerves.

②Her previous **calm** gave way to terror.

③It's important to keep **calm** in an emergency.

2. The job doesn't really challenge her.

A. v. 考验……的技术/能力

B. v. 对……表示怀疑

C. v. 邀请(某人)比赛

3. A band of low pressure is moving across the country, bringing heavy rain.

A. n. 压强

B. n. 心理压力

C. n. 气压

## 课后素养评价(二)

### I. 单词拼写

1. He breathed (呼吸) deeply before he began to speak again.
2. He was curious (好奇的) to know what was happening in the office.
3. Your encouragement made me more confident (有信心的) of my future.
4. The army organised (组织) teams to dig out those who were trapped and to bury the dead.
5. She left me with the impression (印象) that she was unhappy with her job.
6. No matter what happens, you must be calm (镇静的).
7. Could you give us a brief description (描述) of the film?
8. People pushed each other of the way in their eagerness (热切, 渴望) to get to the front to see the robot.
9. The reporter went round interviewing people about local traditions (传统).
10. At this time, British ships were exploring (探索) the world and came across the drink in China.

### II. 短语填空

pay attention to; depend on; one by one;  
wake up; in panic; make the most of

1. After hearing the terrible news that the building caught fire, the crowd ran out in panic.
2. Whether we can hold the meeting or not depends on the weather.
3. As the bell rang, the students went out one by one.
4. This question is very important so I hope all of you pay attention to it.
5. Every student should make the most of what he has to achieve what he wants.
6. They are talking in a whisper in order not to wake up the sleeping baby.

### III. 补全句子

1. 我们正在做我们的家庭作业,这时一个陌生人进来

了。(be doing... when...)

We were doing our homework when a stranger came in.

2. 我发现她激动得说不出话来。(too... to...)

I found that she was too excited to say a word.

3. 门开着,汤姆很快就睡着了。(with 复合结构)

Tom soon fell asleep with the door open.

4. 多么奇怪的植物啊! 我以前从未见过它。(感叹句)

What a strange plant it is! I've never seen it before.

5. 听到这个不幸的消息,他们情不自禁地哭了起来。(现在分词短语作状语)

Hearing the bad news, they couldn't help crying.

### IV. 完形填空

The first day at school has left a deep 1 on me. I'll never forget it.

As soon as I rushed into the classroom, the bell rang. A young beautiful woman came in, but she was 2, no smile on her face. "You are not allowed to 3 me in the course of class unless..." She was speaking when I heard a voice "Lily, Lily" from outside the door. My grandmother was standing there with a pair of socks in her hand. I didn't 4 I was bare feet (光着脚) until then. I wanted to 5 them, but I dared not do that. I shook my hand, 6 "Don't wait here any longer. Leave quickly." As I did so, I still fixed my eyes on my teacher. I really didn't want her to 7 me, but she did. She went out to get the socks. When she gave them to me, she looked at me for a while. My face suddenly turned 8 and my heart beat faster. I began to put the socks on. Unfortunately I was so nervous that my 9 hands couldn't get them onto my feet easily. Just then I heard my name called. I 10 from my seat quickly. "Can you count the numbers from one to one hundred?" the teacher asked. I nodded. To her 11, I did very well. Finally she said, "Be 12, please. Study hard." I

looked up at her to find a smile on her face. I felt relaxed 13.

The first day at school has stayed in my 14 as something embarrassing but 15.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者第一天上学忘记穿袜子,但是看似严厉的老师帮助她化解了尴尬的暖心故事。

1. A. understanding      B. impression  
C. decision      D. attention

B 根据下文“I’ll never forget it.”可知,“我”永远都不会忘记是因为上学的第一天给“我”留下了深刻的印象(impression)。leave a deep impression on sb.意为“给某人留下深刻的印象”。

2. A. nervous      B. amazed  
C. disappointed      D. serious

D 根据下文的“no smile on her face”可知,老师脸上没有笑容,说明老师是一个严肃的(serious)人。

3. A. trouble      B. question  
C. interrupt      D. excuse

C 根据下文的“in the course of class”和“but I dared not do that”可知,“我”不敢那样做是因为老师要求课堂上不要打断(interrupt)她。

4. A. say      B. design  
C. organise      D. realise

D 根据上文“My grandmother was standing there with a pair of socks in her hand.”可知,“我”的奶奶站在那里手里拿着一双袜子,“我”才意识到(realise)“我”没有穿袜子。

5. A. get      B. throw  
C. give      D. show

A 根据上文可知,老师要求上课时不能打断她,因此看到奶奶来送袜子“我”不敢去拿(get)。

6. A. saying      B. meaning  
C. crying      D. shouting

B 根据上文“I shook my hand”可知,“我”不敢说话,摇了摇手的意思是(mean)不要在这里再等了,赶快离开。

7. A. care      B. interest  
C. remember      D. notice

D 根据上文“As I did so, I still fixed my eyes on my teacher.”可知,“我”让奶奶快点离开的同时,

“我”的眼睛还盯着老师,是因为“我”不想让她注意到(notice)“我”。

8. A. healthy      B. happy  
C. red      D. black

C 根据下文的“and my heart beat faster”可知,老师把袜子拿给“我”,“我”感到很尴尬,所以“我”脸红(red)了,而且心跳加快。

9. A. small      B. dirty  
C. shaking      D. cold

C 根据上文的“I was so nervous”可知,“我”很紧张,所以“我”颤抖(shaking)的手不能很容易地把袜子穿到脚上。

10. A. rose      B. escaped  
C. ran      D. jumped

A 根据上文“Just then I heard my name called.”可知,老师叫“我”的名字,“我”从座位上站了起来。rise from one’s seat 意为“从座位上站起来”。

11. A. anxiety      B. curiosity  
C. surprise      D. anger

C 根据下文的“I did very well”可知,老师让“我”从一数到一百,让她很吃惊(surprise)的是,“我”做得很好。

12. A. careful      B. quiet  
C. calm      D. seated

D 根据上文可知,“我”站着回答老师的问题,因此答完了之后,老师让“我”坐下。be seated 意为“坐下”。

13. A. so far      B. at last  
C. on time      D. at first

B 根据上文“I looked up at her to find a smile on her face.”可知,“我”在老师脸上看到了笑容,所以最终(at last)感觉放松了。

14. A. body      B. classroom  
C. memory      D. hand

C 根据第一段中的“I’ll never forget it.”可知,在学校的第一天留在“我”的记忆(memory)中。

15. A. strange      B. sweet  
C. confusing      D. terrible

B 本文讲述了作者第一天上学忘记穿袜子,但是看似严厉的老师帮助她化解了尴尬的暖心故事。所以这个记忆对作者来说是又尴尬又甜蜜(sweet)的。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The Beatles used to be one of the most famous **bands** in England. 乐队
2. The weather is always a safe **topic** of conversation in Britain. 话题
3. According to the **schedule**, all work should be finished before 10 o'clock so we just have 2 hours left. 计划表
4. A **poster** is a large notice or picture that is put up on a wall or board, often in order to advertise something. 海报
5. There is a heated **debate** in our class on whether middle school students should take on part-time jobs on weekends. 讨论, 辩论
6. If you're too busy to go to the **gym**, there are plenty of ways to still get your sweat on. 体育馆, 健身房
7. Sometimes his **inner** thoughts and his outer actions do not match. 内心的
8. The country **gained** its independence fifty years ago. 获得, 赢得

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>drama</u> <i>n.</i> 戏剧	<u>dramatic</u> <i>adj.</i> 戏剧性的
	<u>dramatically</u> <i>adv.</i> 戏剧性地
<u>photography</u> <i>n.</i> 摄影	<u>photograph</u> <i>n.</i> 相片 <i>vi.</i> 拍照, 摄影; 被照相 <i>vt.</i> 给……照相
	<u>photographer</u> <i>n.</i> 摄影爱好者; 摄影师
<u>argue</u> <i>v.</i> 争论, 争辩	<u>argument</u> <i>n.</i> 争论; 辩论
	<u>arguable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可辩论的; 可论证的
<u>sharp</u> <i>adj.</i> 敏锐的, 聪明的	<u>sharply</u> <i>adv.</i> 尖刻地; 严厉地; 猛烈地
	<u>sharpen</u> <i>v.</i> (使) 变得锋利; 使明朗; (使) 提高, 改善

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>intelligent</u> <i>adj.</i> 有智慧的, 聪明的	<u>intelligence</u> <i>n.</i> 智力; 才智; 智慧
<u>investigate</u> <i>v.</i> 查明, 调查	<u>investigation</u> <i>n.</i> 调查; 研究
<u>various</u> <i>adj.</i> 各种各样的, 各种不同的	<u>vary</u> <i>v.</i> 变化
	<u>variety</u> <i>n.</i> 种类; 多样性
<u>volunteer</u> <i>n.</i> 志愿者, 义务工作者, 自愿参加者	<u>voluntary</u> <i>adj.</i> 志愿的; 自愿的
<u>apply</u> <i>v.</i> 申请	<u>application</u> <i>n.</i> 申请; 申请书; 应用
	<u>applicant</u> <i>n.</i> 申请人

III. 补全短语

1. look after 照顾
2. take part in 参加, 参与
3. care about 关心
4. take up 占据(时间、空间等)
5. come along 快来; 赶快
6. at a time 一次

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: make+宾语+宾语补足语  
The exam made me quite nervous.  
这次考试使我相当紧张。
2. 句型公式: not only... but also...  
These activities not only help them gain more skills, but also teach them to care about others.  
这些活动不仅帮助他们获得更多的技能, 而且教会他们关心他人。
3. 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语  
To help them do this, some senior high schools offer courses in time management.  
为了帮助他们做到这一点, 一些高中开设了时间管理课程。



任务型课堂

1. argue v. 争论, 争辩; 主张; 说服

[教材原文] **Argue** about the week's hottest topics with the school's sharpest minds!

与学校最敏锐的人讨论本周最热门的话题!

[归纳拓展]

(1) argue with sb. about/over sth. 与某人辩论某事

argue for/against sth. 赞成/反对某事

argue sb. into/out of doing sth. 说服某人做/不做某事

argue that... 主张……, 认为……

(2) argument n. 争论; 辩论

have an argument (with sb.) (about/over sth.) (因某事)(与某人)争吵

It is beyond argument that... 无可争辩的是……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I'm not going to argue with you, but I think you're wrong.

② It is beyond argument (argue) that the early years are important to a person's development.

③ He is very stubborn (固执的), so it is impossible to argue him into doing what he doesn't want to.

(2) 完成句子

We try to argue her out of going there alone.  
我们尽力说服她不要独自去那里。

2. apply v. 申请; 适用, 应用于 (与 to 连用)

[教材原文] After-school activities also play a part when students **apply** to college.

课外活动在学生申请大学时也有用。

[归纳拓展]

(1) apply (to sb.) for sth. (向某人) 申请某事

apply to do sth. 申请做某事

apply to sth./sb. 适用于/运用于某物/某人

apply... to... 把……应用于……; 把……涂抹到……

apply oneself to doing sth. 集中精力做某事, 专注于做某事

(2) applicant n. 申请人 (尤指求职、进高等学校等)

(3) application n. 申请; 申请书; 应用

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Next week is the deadline (截止时间) for sending in your application (apply).

② This rule cannot apply to children.

③ He is now applying himself to studying (study) traditional Chinese medical science.

④ I'd like to apply for the position (职位) you advertised in *China Daily*.

多义词汇专练

sharp

A. *adj.* 锋利的

B. *adj.* 敏锐的

C. *adj.* 尖刻的

D. *adj.* 急剧的

E. *adj.* 剧烈的

F. *adj.* 刺耳的

① The cruel woman has a **sharp** tongue.

C

② I suddenly felt a **sharp** pain in my back.

E

③ It's dangerous to play with a **sharp** knife.

A

④ The young man has **sharp** eyes.

B

⑤ Through all the noise came a **sharp** warning cry.

F

⑥ Be careful! There is a **sharp** bend on the road.

D

语法探究

基本句型

续表

「语法感知」

- ①The sun rises in the east every day.  
②The people present didn't know her.  
③This is an English-Chinese dictionary.  
④Would you please pass me that dictionary?  
= Would you please pass that dictionary to me?  
⑤I saw a stranger enter the building.
1. 句①是主谓状(SVA)结构,此类句型的谓语动词(短语)是不及物动词(短语)。  
2. 句②是主谓宾(SVO)结构,此类句型的谓语动词(短语)是一个及物动词(短语),后面必须跟宾语,常用作宾语的有名词、代词、不定式、动名词或从句等。  
3. 句③是主系表(SVP)结构,此类句型的谓语动词必须加上一个表明主语身份或状态的表语构成复合谓语,才能表达完整意思,这类动词叫作连系动词。表语常由名词、形容词、介词短语、分词、不定式或从句充当。  
4. 句④是主谓宾宾(SVIODO)结构,即“主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语”,句中的直接宾语也可提至间接宾语前,此时间接宾语前需加介词 to 或 for。  
5. 句⑤是主谓宾宾补(SVOOC)结构,谓语动词后要跟复合宾语(宾语+宾语补足语),常用作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、介词短语、不定式、现在分词、过去分词等。

「语法精讲」

一、句子成分

句子成分包括以下几类:

成分	意义	位置
主语 S(Subject)	句子的主体;谓语陈述、说明的对象,说明动作由“谁”发出	位于句首
谓语 V(Verb)	表示主语的行为或状态,是英语句子的灵魂、核心	主语之后
宾语 O(Object)	表示行为或活动的对象、接受者或受影响者	动词或介词后

成分	意义	位置
直接宾语 DO (Direct Object)	表示动作的承受者,一般是物	动词后
间接宾语 IO (Indirect Object)	表示动作是对谁或为谁做的,一般是人	动词后
表语 P(Predicative)	用来说明主语的身份、性质、状况等	系动词后
宾语补足语 OC(Object Complement)	补充说明宾语的动作或状态	宾语后
状语 A(Adverbial)	说明动作“何时、何地、如何”发生;说明形容词或副词的程度	位置灵活

二、基本句型

1. S+V: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)  
The rain stopped. 雨停了。  
The sun has risen. 太阳升起来了。  
**句型特点总结:**谓语动词是不及物动词,本身能表达完整的意思,后面不需接宾语。
2. S+V+A: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+状语(Adverbial)  
We'll leave next week.  
我们将在下周离开。  
The old man is walking in the park.  
那个老人正在公园里散步。  
**句型特点总结:**本结构中充当谓语的不及物动词后常常跟状语才能表达完整的意思,状语包括时间状语、地点状语、方式状语、程度状语等。
3. S+V+O: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+宾语(Object)  
We are learning English.  
我们正在学习英语。  
I don't know him.  
我不认识他。  
**句型特点总结:**谓语动词是及物动词,不能表达完整的意思,其后必须要接一个宾语。



4. S+V(*vi.*+*prep.*)+O+A: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+宾语(Object)+状语(Adverbial)

I lived in Beijing five years ago.

五年前我住在北京。

They are waiting for the bus patiently.

他们正耐心地等公共汽车。

**句型特点总结:**本结构中的动词为不及物动词,所以必须加上介词才能跟宾语;另外加上状语表达的意思更完整。

5. S+V+IO+DO: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+间接宾语(Indirect Object)+直接宾语(Direct Object)

Her mother bought her a skirt.

她的妈妈给她买了一条裙子。

Mr Li told us an interesting story.

李先生给我们讲了一个有趣的故事。

**句型特点总结:**谓语动词后接两个宾语,这两个宾语都是动作的对象或承受者,其中指人的是间接宾语,指物的是直接宾语。当间接宾语放在直接宾语之后时,其前通常需要加介词 for 或 to。

6. S+V+O+OC: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+宾语(Object)+宾语补足语(Object Complement)

The news made us sad.

那个消息令我们难过。

The teacher asked us to answer the question.

老师叫我们回答那个问题。

We must keep our school clean.

我们必须保持我们的学校干净。

**句型特点总结:**谓语动词后虽然已接一个宾语,但意思还不完整,必须再加上另外一个成分(宾语补足语)对宾语进行补充说明。可以用作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、副词、不定式、动名词、分词、介词短语等。

7. S+V+P: 主语(Subject)+系动词(Link Verb)+表语(Predicative)

My sister is a nurse.

我的姐姐是一名护士。

I feel quite hungry.

我感觉很饿。

The ball is under the desk.

那个球在书桌底下。

**句型特点总结:**谓语动词是系动词,不能表达完整的意思,其后必须接一个能表明主语特征、身份、状态的表语。常见的系动词有 be(是), become(成为), get(变得), turn(变得), grow(变得), look(看起来), feel(摸上去), smell(闻起来), taste(尝起来), sound(听起来), seem(似乎), keep(保持), stay(保持)等。

名师点拨 ■■■

巧记基本句型

英语句子千千万,基本句型把线牵;

句型种类看动词,后接什么是关键;

系词后面接表语,*vi.* 独身无牵连;

*vt.* 又可分三类,单宾双宾最常见;

还有宾语补足语,各种搭配记心间。

「语法冲关」

I. 选出下面句子分别属于哪种句型

①S V    ②S V A    ③S V O    ④S V O A

⑤S V P    ⑥S V IO DO    ⑦S V O OC

1. Peter told us a story. ⑥
2. The man next to me smiled. ①
3. I have a lot of books. ③
4. She bought herself a new dress. ⑥
5. He noticed a man enter the room. ⑦
6. I will spend this summer holiday in the countryside. ④
7. The water is clean in our hometown. ⑤
8. I can hear birds singing in the green trees. ⑦
9. The little girl smiled happily. ②
10. I wrote a letter to Jane. ⑥

II. 翻译句子

1. 他们举办了一个晚会来庆祝他们的成功。

They held a party to celebrate their success.

2. 在业余时间我喜欢听流行音乐。

I enjoy listening to popular music in my spare time.

3. 我的朋友打算给我做顿饭。

My friend is going to cook me a meal.

## 课后素养评价(三)

## I. 词语填空

debate; gain; stage; schedule; take up; sharp;  
apply; topic

1. We were afraid he would be nervous on stage, but he performed beautifully.
2. There is a debate on whether students should have mobile phones at school.
3. I am sorry to take up so much of your time.
4. The knife is very sharp so you should be careful when using it.
5. I'm writing to apply for the job in your company because I believe I am suitable for it.
6. When talking with British people, you should be careful not to ask about personal topics.
7. There is no need to worry about it for everything goes according to the schedule.
8. Many of his ideas have gained popular support which makes him feel glad.

## II. 单句语法填空

1. You sang beautifully (beautiful) last night, which surprised all of us.
2. His great progress in English made us surprised (surprise).
3. The young man whose wish is to become (become) a scientist is studying in a famous college.
4. He found it important to master a foreign language when looking for a job.
5. He asked me to come (come) back soon.
6. In my opinion, his words sounded reasonable (reason).
7. He succeeded in finishing (finish) the work in time with the help of his friend.
8. I often hear her sing (sing) English songs in the next room.
9. The super-thin plastic bags are (be) the main source of white pollution.
10. What he said just now made all the audience very excited (exciting).
11. What do you think of these arguments (argue) on the other side?
12. The boy is quite intelligent (intelligence) but does not work hard enough.
13. Ms Chilton says she hopes more people will volunteer to help (help) children.
14. There are various (vary) ways to help protect our environment.
15. He decides to go to France to study and is now applying himself to learning (learn) French.

## III. 阅读理解

High school students perform better on tests if they are in a classroom with a view (视野) of a green space, instead of a windowless room or a room with a view of built-up space, according to research from the University of Illinois Department of Landscape Architecture.

“It is the first to show a relationship between studying with a green view and students’ performance,” said William Sullivan, head of the research team. “It’s a significant finding that if you have a green view outside your window, you’ll do better on tests.” Sullivan hopes the results of their research will lead to policy (政策) changes. “Changes in school design, for example, would be a much better thing than any of the things we spend money on in secondary education today,” Sullivan said.

The research included 94 students at five central Illinois high schools. Students were randomly assigned (随机分配) to one of three kinds of classrooms—windowless, with a window looking out onto built-up space, or with a window looking out onto green space. Each kind of classroom had a similar size and layout. The students took part in one-on-one experiments in which they did 30 minutes of activities that included a proofreading exercise, a speech and a maths exercise. Following the activities the students were given an attention test which asked them to repeat a series of (一连串) numbers.

The findings: Students did better on both study activities and the attention test if they were in a classroom with a green view, Sullivan said.

The researchers suggest their findings can help planners and policymakers improve students’ well-

being and learning. For example, planners can choose sites for new schools that already have trees and other vegetation, or they can plant many trees on the site; architects (建筑师) can design classroom, dining room and hallway windows so they look onto green space.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了高中生在拥有绿色空间视野的教室里,比在没有窗户的教室里或在能看到建筑空间的教室里,在考试中表现得更好。

1. What did the study find out about high school students?
- A. They like to have green plants in their classrooms.
- B. They will get better grades when studying in different classrooms.
- C. Changes in school design will influence their attitudes towards teachers.
- D. A green view through a classroom window can improve their performance.
- D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 “It’s a significant finding that if you have a green view outside your window, you’ll do better on tests.” 可知,关于高中生,这项研究发现透过教室窗户看到的绿色风景可以提高他们的成绩。故选 D。
2. What does the underlined word “significant” in Paragraph 2 mean?
- A. Traditional.
- B. Important.
- C. Necessary.

D. Early.

B 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的 “Sullivan hopes the results of their research will lead to policy (政策) changes.” 可知,这项发现能导致政策的改变,所以是一项重要的发现。故选 B。

3. What is Paragraph 3 mainly about?
- A. How the study was carried out.
- B. Why the study was different.
- C. The purpose of the study.
- D. The result of the study.
- A 段落大意题。根据第三段中的 “Students were randomly assigned (随机分配) to one of three kinds of classrooms—windowless, with a window looking out onto built-up space, or with a window looking out onto green space. Each kind of...” 可知,本段主要讲的是这项研究是如何进行的。故选 A。
4. What do the researchers think of the study?
- A. It has drawn public attention to education.
- B. It can play a guiding role in school planning.
- C. It has encouraged students to get close to nature.
- D. It needs more support from high school teachers.
- B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 “The researchers suggest their findings can help planners and policymakers improve students’ well-being and learning.” 可知,研究人员认为这项研究可以在学校规划中起到指导作用。故选 B。

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. award *n.* 奖, 奖赏
2. opportunity *n.* 机会, 时机
3. view *n.* (一次) 观看
4. former *adj.* 从前的
5. graduate *v.* 毕业
6. frightened *adj.* 受惊的, 害怕的

7. sight *n.* 看到, 看见
8. select *v.* 挑选, 选择
9. particular *n.* 细节
10. refer *v.* 参考, 查阅
11. junior *adj.* 低年级的
12. struggle *v.* 奋斗, 拼搏
13. memorise *v.* 记住, 熟记
14. forward *adv.* 向前

15. improve *v.* 改善, 改进
16. performance *n.* (工作或活动中的) 表现
17. exchange *v.* 交流(信息、想法等)
18. figure *v.* 认为, 以为
19. specific *adj.* 具体的, 特定的
20. in particular 尤其, 特别
21. refer to 参考, 查阅
22. look forward to (兴奋地) 期待, 盼望
23. graduate from 从……毕业
24. be about to do 将要做……
25. as if 仿佛, 好像
26. deal with 应对; 处理
27. at the sight of 一看到
28. give... a hand 帮助……

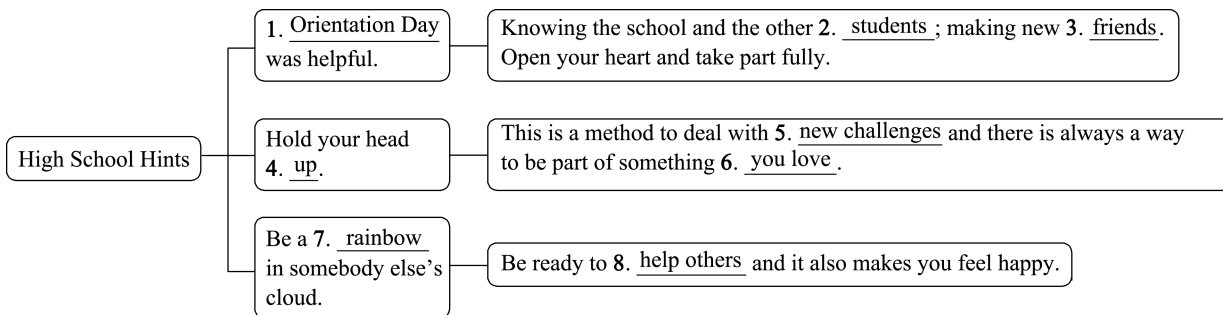
## (二) 阅读词汇

1. hint *n.* 有益的建议
2. subscribe *v.* 订阅(报纸或杂志)
3. rainbow *n.* 彩虹
4. neat *adj.* 好的, 令人愉快的
5. journal *n.* 日记, 日志
6. skateboarding *n.* 滑板运动
7. committee *n.* 委员会
8. rate *v.* 对……作评估, 评价
9. Orientation Day 迎新日
10. go all out 全力以赴, 竭尽全力
11. hold one's head up 昂首向前
12. keep an open mind 开朗

## 多维化析文

### 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What helped Lisa when she first started high school?
  - A. Her English teacher's advice.
  - B. Orientation Day.
  - C. Her parents' support.
  - D. Her friends' encouragement.

答案: B
2. How did Lisa deal with the chemistry test at the end of the first week?
  - A. She decided to face failure bravely.
  - B. She asked her deskmate for help.
  - C. She refused to take the exam.
  - D. She was too frightened to write down the answers.

答案: A

3. How did Lisa deal with her not being selected for the end-of-year competition?
  - A. She kept being angry.
  - B. She tried to forget it.
  - C. She forgot why she joined the team.
  - D. She kept working hard to support her teammates.

答案: D

4. What is the purpose of Lisa using the words from Maya Angelou?
  - A. To tell us Maya Angelou is a great writer.
  - B. To tell us we should give our friends a hand when they need it.
  - C. To tell us she likes Maya Angelou best.
  - D. To tell us how to make friends.

答案: B

### 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Lisa 1. graduated (graduate) from our school last June and is about 2. to go (go) to college. She came to share her suggestions for high school 3. with us. Lisa said Orientation Day was really 4. helpful (help) when she first started high school, and it is a fantastic opportunity for new students to get to know the school and the other 5. students (student). Though Lisa was a member of the school volleyball team, she wasn't selected for the end-of-year 6. competition (compete). At first, she was really sad, 7. but later she realized that she joined the team for the love of the sport. It wasn't just about winning. So she kept 8. working (work) hard to support her teammates during their training. Lisa 9. totally (total) agreed with the wonderful words from the writer Maya Angelou—Be a rainbow in somebody else's cloud. So she suggested that we should give our friends 10. a hand when they need it. And this will make us feel good, too.

#### Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. But then I figured I'd better just go all out and see what happens.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。I'd better just go all out and see what happens 是省略了连接词 that 的宾语从句,该从句含有 what 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]不过接着我就觉得,最好还是全力以赴考考看。

2. At first I was really sad, but later I realised that I joined the team for the love of the sport.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。but 为并列连词,连接两个并列句。在后一个分句中,that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]一开始我非常难过,但后来我意识到,我是因为热爱这项运动才加入球队的。

3. Looking back on my high school life, the most important advice I'd give is these wonderful words from the writer Maya Angelou.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。Looking back on my high school life 为现在分词短语作时间状语; I'd give 为省略了关系代词 that 的定语从句,其先行词为 advice。

[尝试翻译]回顾高中生活,我会给大家的最重要的建议就是作家玛雅·安吉罗的一句精彩名言。

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Which piece of advice do you find is of great use? Why?

Give your friends a hand when they need it.  
Because only in this way can you make true friends.

2. If you were Lisa, one student who isn't good at English wants to change the situation, what advice will you give to him/her?

Enlarge his/her vocabulary and keep doing some reading.

## 课后素养评价(四)

### I. 单词拼写

1. You can select (挑选) five things that represent Chinese culture.
2. I happened to meet my former (从前的) English teacher this morning.
3. Have you exchanged (交换) ideas with your parents about your new job?
4. The listening ability can be improved (提高) as long as you practise listening every day.
5. The girl said that she was a high school graduate (毕业生) and had no experience.

6. His best movie, which won several awards (奖), was about the life of a scientist.
7. A company whose profits from home markets are down may seek opportunities (机会) abroad.
8. Carl took a long, deep breath, struggling (努力) to control his own emotions.
9. He made a public apology for the team's poor performance (表现).
10. The committee (委员会) is made up of five people, including two women.
11. She figured (认为) that both she and Ned had

learned a lot from the experience.

12. I suggest that you ask him some specific (具体的) questions about his past.
13. Liza was so frightened (害怕的) that she couldn't make a sound.
14. The article on the Internet receives thousands of views (观看).
15. I can't stand the sight (看见, 看到) of the boy who is very lazy!
16. We had a great time—it was pretty neat (好的, 令人愉快的).
17. Every day read a poem aloud several times until you have it memorised (记住).

## II. 短语填空

refer to; at the sight of; look forward to;  
for sure; in particular; deal with; at the  
end of

1. I miss you very much; I am looking forward to your arrival as soon as possible.
2. We'll have a quiz at the end of the class.
3. I don't know when he will arrive so I can't tell you the time for sure.
4. Parents and coaches in particular should act as better examples for children.
5. There are so many mistakes in your writing so you must deal with them immediately.
6. The famous scientist referred to global warming at least three times in his speech.
7. The woman couldn't help screaming (尖叫) at the sight of that murderer.

## III. 补全句子

1. 他表现得好像他已经知道了这个结果。(as if)  
He behaved as if he had known the result.
2. 她断定自己准是把包落在火车上了。(must + have done)  
She reasoned that she must have left her bag on the train.
3. 除非被邀请, 否则我不会去参加他的聚会。(状语从句的省略)  
I won't go to his party unless invited.
4. 一个灿烂的笑容不仅能使我们自己高兴, 而且能使他人感到愉快。(not only... but also...)

A beautiful smile not only can make ourselves happy, but also can enable others to feel delighted.

## IV. 七选五

We have two main aims for your academic life at high school: that you achieve the best possible academic results you can, and that you really enjoy your learning, acquiring an intellectual (智力的) curiosity that will last you all your life. Teachers will help you with both areas of your development.

### 1

A classroom is a formal setting and you should behave accordingly. Don't shout your ideas out. Your teacher can only hear one person speak at a time. Do cooperate, so that everyone can learn in the most effective way. Do take risks by having a go, even if you are not certain you know the answer.

### 2

Getting things wrong is an important part of how you learn and no one is expected to be perfect. You will enjoy your lessons much more if you get fully involved and have a go. However, it is extremely important that you listen carefully to instructions and to the ideas of others.

Even if the teacher has not told you to make notes, it is a good idea to do so in order to have a record of what happened in that lesson. 3 This will be important as you reflect each day on what you have learnt.

### 4

This is the advice you need to get better. It is sometimes a good idea to turn the teachers' comment into your own words and set yourself a target for the next piece of work.

Every week, read through your notes, highlighting key facts and information, and making up shorter revision notes. 5

- A. There is no such thing as a silly question.
- B. Here are some tips for doing well in lessons.
- C. You will learn much more from your mistakes.
- D. And your teachers will support you as you learn.
- E. This will really help you when the exams come round.
- F. Ensure you read the comment in the teachers' marking.
- G. Always write the date, a title and some short explanation of the topic of the lesson.

答案: 1~5 BCGFE



Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. He received the **award** in recognition of his success over the past year. 奖, 奖赏
2. His income has been reduced to half its **former** amount due to the economic depression. 从前的
3. I **figured** that if I took the night train, I could be in Scotland by morning. 认为, 以为
4. This is the cause (事业) for which we have been **struggling**. 奋斗, 拼搏
5. What I'm going to do in this lecture is focus on something very **specific**. 具体的, 特定的
6. It might present challenges as well as **opportunities**. 机会, 时机
7. It's said that a private **view** of the Summer Exhibition will be held. (一次) 观看
8. After graduating from a **junior** middle school, he entered a senior middle school. 低年级的
9. Rhodes is currently **rated** the top junior player in the country. 对……作评估, 评价
10. Timor Leste has joined many international sport associations (协会), including the International Olympic **Committee** (IOC). 委员会

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>subscribe</u> v. 订阅(报纸或杂志)	<u>subscriber</u> n. (报刊的) 订阅人, 订购者, 订户
	<u>subscription</u> n. 订阅, 订购; (报刊等的) 订阅费, 订购款
<u>graduate</u> v. 毕业 n. 毕业生	<u>graduation</u> n. 毕业
<u>frightened</u> adj. 受惊的, 害怕的	<u>fright</u> n. 惊吓, 恐怖
	<u>frighten</u> v. 使吃惊; 惊吓
	<u>frightening</u> adj. 令人害怕的
<u>select</u> v. 挑选, 选择	<u>selection</u> n. 选择, 挑选; 选拔
<u>particular</u> n. 细节 adj. 特定的, 特指的	<u>particularly</u> adv. 特别, 尤其

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>refer</u> v. 参考, 查阅	<u>reference</u> n. 参考, 查阅
<u>memorise</u> v. 记住, 熟记	<u>memory</u> n. 记忆, 记忆力; 回忆
	<u>memorable</u> adj. 值得纪念的; 难忘的
<u>improve</u> v. 改善, 改进	<u>improvement</u> n. 改善, 改进
<u>performance</u> n. (工作或活动中的) 表现; 表演	<u>perform</u> v. 演出; 表现; 执行; 起……作用
	<u>performer</u> n. 表演者; 执行者
<u>exchange</u> v. 交流(信息、想法等); 交换, 互换; 调换, 更换; 兑换	<u>exchangeable</u> adj. 可交换的; 可兑换的; 可调换的

III. 补全短语

1. graduate from 从……毕业
2. at the end of 在……结束的时候
3. at the sight of 一见到……
4. go all out 全力以赴, 竭尽全力
5. deal with 处理, 应对
6. in particular 尤其, 特别
7. look back on 回顾, 回忆
8. refer to 参考, 查阅
9. around the corner 即将来临; 在拐角处
10. look forward to (兴奋地) 期待, 盼望

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: as if 引导表语从句  
I feel as if high school was only yesterday!  
我觉得高中生活就像昨天发生的事一样历历在目!
2. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语  
Looking back on my high school life, the most important advice I'd give is these wonderful words from the writer Maya Angelou.  
回顾高中生活, 我会给大家的最重要的建议就是作家玛雅·安吉罗的一句精彩名言。
3. 句型公式: so... that... 引导结果状语从句  
... but the teacher spoke so fast that I couldn't take everything down.  
……但是老师讲得太快了, 我不能把所有东西都记下来。

## 任务型课堂

1. frightened *adj.* 受惊的, 害怕的

[教材原文] I was **frightened** at the sight of the test paper.

我一看到试卷就害怕了。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be frightened of... 害怕……

be frightened to do sth. 不敢做某事

be frightened to death 被吓得要死

be frightened that... 害怕……

(2) fright *n.* 惊吓, 恐怖

in fright 害怕

(3) frighten *v.* 使害怕; 惊吓

frighten sb. into doing sth. 把某人吓得做某事

frighten... off 把……吓走

frighten sb. away 把某人吓走

frighten sb. to do sth. 恐吓某人做某事

frighten sb. to death 把某人吓得要死

(4) frightening *adj.* 令人害怕的

名师点拨 ■■■■

frightening 和 frightened 同为形容词, 但用法却不相同。frightening 表示“令人害怕的”, 修饰物; frightened 表示“感到害怕的”, 修饰人以及人的表情、眼神、声音等。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It's frightening (frighten) to think it could happen again.

② The little girl was frightened (frighten) that her mother wouldn't come back.

③ My hair stood on end with fright (frighten).

(2) 完成句子

① I'm frightened of walking home alone in the dark.

我害怕在黑夜独自走路回家。

② I'm too frightened to ask him now.

现在我吓得不敢问他了。

## 2. refer to 参考, 查阅; 提到, 谈到; 指的是

[教材原文] Refer to the interview for ideas.

参考这个采访来获取想法。

[归纳拓展]

(1) refer to a dictionary = look up sth. in a dictionary 查字典

refer to... as... 称……为……

(2) reference *n.* 参考, 查阅

reference book 参考书

for reference 备案, 备查, 供参考

名师点拨 ■■■■

refer 的过去式、过去分词和现在分词都先双写“r”, 再加上“-ed”或“-ing”。类似的词有 prefer。

[即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 refer to 的含义

① What does the underlined word “it” in Paragraph 7 **refer to**? 指的是

② Don't **refer to** your notes or dictionary when taking a test. 参考, 查阅

③ In his speech, he didn't **refer to** the problem at all. 提到, 谈到

(2) 完成句子

Teachers in kindergarten are referred to as leaders of children.

幼儿园老师被称为孩子王。

## 3. so... that... 引导结果状语从句

[教材原文] ... but the teacher spoke **so** fast **that** I couldn't take everything down.

……但是老师讲得太快了, 我不能把所有东西都记下来。

[归纳拓展]

(1) so... that... 意为“如此……以至于……”, 引导结果状语从句, so 后常接形容词或副词。常见形式:

so +  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{adj./adv.} \\ \text{adj.} + \text{a/an} + \\ \text{可数名词单数} \\ \text{many/few} + \text{可数名词} \\ \text{复数} \\ \text{much/little(少量)} + \\ \text{不可数名词} \end{array} \right\} + \text{that 从句}$

(2) such... that... 也表示“如此……以至于……”, 但 such 修饰名词。常见形式:

such +  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{a/an} + \text{adj.} + \text{可数名词} \\ \text{单数} \\ \text{adj.} + \text{可数名词复数} \\ \text{adj.} + \text{不可数名词} \end{array} \right\} + \text{that 从句}$



(3)在“so... that...”和“such... that...”结构中,当“so/such...”位于句首时,其所在的句子要用部分倒装。

名师点拨

so... that...只能引导结果状语从句,而 so that 既可以引导结果状语从句,也可以引导目的状语从句,且 so that 引导的目的状语从句中常含有情态动词。

[即学即练]

(1)选词填空:so, such

- ①Palsson screamed so loudly that her daughter came running from the house.  
②There was such a terrible snowstorm that I could hardly see.  
③I have made such rapid progress in English that my parents are proud of me.  
④You can't imagine such little birds can eat so many insects in such a short time.

⑤So curious were the couple about wild plants that they decided to make a trip to Brazil for further research.

⑥(2023·新课标Ⅱ卷改编) We also need to protect nature so that we can interact (交流) with it.

(2)根据提示补全句子

①I was so nervous that (如此紧张以至于) I could hardly tell which direction was left.

②He liked it so much that (如此喜欢它以至于) he quickly walked into the shop.

③It was such fine weather (天气如此之好) that we all went out for a picnic.

(3)句型转换

He spoke Chinese so fluently that we thought he was Chinese.

→ So fluently did he speak Chinese that we thought he was Chinese.

多义词汇专练

1. figure

A. n. 身材; 体形

B. n. 人物

C. n. 数字

D. n. 人影

E. v. 认为

①We're told the **figure** can reach 100,000 next year.

C

②She realised she looked like a child, with her tiny **figure**.

A

③The movement is supported by key **figures** in the three main political parties.

B

④I saw a **figure** approaching in the darkness.

D

⑤We **figured** the sensible thing to do was to wait.

E

2. These generous businessmen **subscribed** to our school to help those poor students.

A

A. v. 定期捐款

B. v. 订阅

C. v. 认购(股份)

3. The car is running at a **rate** of eighty kilometres per hour.

C

A. n. 费用

B. n. 比率

C. n. 速度

写作探究

有关高中生活的日记

「写作指导」

日记是以记叙一天生活中所见、所闻、所做或所思为内容的一种文体。写英语日记一般要注意以下几点:

1. 规范的格式:英语日记通常由两部分组成,即开头语和正文。开头语用于记载写日记的日期和天气情况。它位于正文上面的第一行,顶格写起。日

期写在第一行的左上角,天气情况写在第一行的右上角。

2. 正确的人称:日记是对生活的记录,是把自己一天中最有意义的事情记录下来所形成的书面材料,故写日记多用第一人称。

3. 正确的时态:日记一般记叙当天发生的事,因此多用过去时态。但如果谈论个人感悟或说明客观事实、普遍真理时,可用现在时态。

「典题示例」

假定你是高一学生李华，你进入高中已有一周。请根据下列提示用英语写一篇日记，介绍你的新学校的情况。

- 1. 校园面貌；
- 2. 同学情况；
- 3. 校园生活。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	日记
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	以第一、三人称为主
要点	1. 导入话题 2. 介绍新学校的情况 3. 个人感受

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① I entered senior high (进入高中) a week ago.
- ② The new school left a deep impression on me (给我留下了深刻的印象).
- ③ The campus is large and beautiful with a lot of trees around (周边有很多树). (with 复合结构)
- ④ They are all hard-working and it puts me under pressure (使我处于压力之下).
- ⑤ However, I decide to go all out (全力以赴) and face the challenges bravely (勇敢地面对挑战).
- ⑥ We can take part in all kinds of after-school activities (参加各种各样的课外活动).

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 将 Step 2 中句①升级为含有 since 引导的时间状语从句的句子。  
It is a week since I entered senior high.
- ② 将 Step 2 中句④升级为含有 which 引导的定语从句的主从复合句。

They are all hard-working, which puts me under pressure.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Tuesday September 8th Sunny

It is a week since I entered senior high. The new school left a deep impression on me.

The campus is large and beautiful with a lot of trees around. Our classroom is big and there are forty-five students in our class. They are all hard-working, which puts me under pressure. However, I decide to go all out and face the challenges bravely. We can take part in all kinds of after-school activities. So we lead a very colourful school life.

All in all, I think that my first week at senior high is a very good experience.

「学以致用」

假定你是李华，今天(星期六，9月21日，晴)在公园散步时遇到一位外国游客。你和他进行了交流。请围绕这件事写一篇英语日记。要点如下：

- 1. 你想跟他谈话却不知所措；
- 2. 你向他介绍你的城市；
- 3. 他给你一些学习英语的建议。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；  
2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

参考范文：

Saturday September 21 Fine

This morning when I was taking a walk in a park, I saw a foreigner enjoying the beauty of the city.

I wanted to talk with him, but I was so nervous that I didn't know how to start a conversation. Eager to practise my spoken English, I encouraged myself and went to say hello to him. He was very friendly and we talked for about 15 minutes. As a native, I introduced some tourist attractions and tasty food of our city to him.

Finally, he gave me some advice on how to improve my English further. What an unforgettable experience!

## 课后素养评价(五)

### I. 单句语法填空

- There are several specific problems need to be dealt with.
- The whole meal was good, and the wine in particular was excellent.
- Miriam was too frightened (frighten) to tell her family what had happened.
- In his speech, the man referred to a recent trip to Canada.
- This job provides them an opportunity to develop (develop) new skills.
- James looks forward to meeting (meet) you to discuss the problem with you.
- They asked what his plans were after graduation (graduate).
- The actors even use the funny words to make their performances (perform) interesting and alive.
- The boy cannot help laughing at the sight of the toy he likes best.
- Eating fish can provide health benefits (益处), particularly (particular) to the heart.
- At the end of the game, players traditionally exchange shirts with each other.
- There has been a big improvement (improve) in the children's behavior.
- The young man struggles to live (live) on his own.
- In my view, watching the news on TV is a good way to learn English.
- He was awarded (award) the Nobel Prize for literature soon after the book was published.
- I had terrible problems memorising (memory) the new words in this book.

### II. 完成句子

- Enjoy what you are about to read. And tell us what you think.  
享受你将阅读到的一切,告诉我们你怎么想的。
- So excited was he that he could hardly say a word.  
他如此激动,以致几乎连话都说不出来了。

- It appears as if/though I was wrong.

看起来好像是我错了。

### III. 语法填空

I 1. woke (wake) up earlier this morning, excited but nervous, because I would begin my journey of senior high. Thousands of 2. thoughts (thought) rushed through my mind. "Will I fit in? Will I make friends? Will I have nice teachers?" When I felt nervous, my mum told me, "You will be fine if you follow school rules and do 3. what is asked."

I put on my school uniform and tried 4. my (I) best to look confident. All students were asked 5. to meet (meet) on the school playground. I could feel the tension (紧张) in the air, then I knew I was not the only one 6. that/who felt this way.

After a tour of the campus, we headed towards our classroom. I felt very pleased because the students and teachers in my class were kind and 7. friendly (friend). As the lunch bell rang, I had lunch with my new classmates, 8. talking (talk) about our holidays and hobbies. I spent an exciting day here.

My first day at senior high taught me that I shouldn't express doubts about something so 9. quickly (quick) before I had tried it. I love the new school now. I hope your first day will be one of 10. the best days of your life too.

### IV. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的英国笔友 Mike 由于父母工作变动,要转到另一个城市的学校上学。他发邮件向你询问如何尽快融入新班级,请你用英语回复一封邮件,内容包括:

- 多交朋友;
- 多参加学校活动;
- 其他建议。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

## 参考范文:

Dear Mike,

Sorry to hear that you have difficulty adapting to the new school. Here are my suggestions.

First, you should get along well with your classmates and make friends with them. In this way, you will get to know each other better. Second, try to take part in as many school activities as possible, which are good for developing friendship with other students. Last but not least, consider turning to your teachers for help, who can usually give you some valuable suggestions.

I sincerely hope my advice will be of some help to you.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

**The Voice of Rigo**

Rigo had a loud voice. People were always telling Rigo to be quiet. His mother would tell him to use his quiet voice inside the house because the baby was asleep. His father would ask him to speak quietly in the car so that he could concentrate on his driving. His teacher would tell him to talk quietly so he would not bother others who were studying.

Not only did he have a loud voice, but Rigo liked to talk a lot. Whenever he had time, he would talk with his classmates, sharing everything that he considered fun. He liked to yell and shout. Sometimes he just yelled, “Hey!” for no reason. He liked the sound of his very loud voice for he thought it had more penetrating (穿透的) power than that of an actor. But not everyone felt the same way.

When Rigo shouted goodbye as he left for school, his mother shook her head, “Rigo! Be quiet!” When his father drove him to school, Rigo said, “Hey! There’s Chris!” He pointed at his friend, who was walking to school. His father shook his head, “Rigo, use a quiet voice in the car.” At school, his teacher talked to him three times about using his quiet voice. His classmates shook their

heads, throwing an upset look at him when he talked aloud.

Later, Rigo had to sit by himself for a while. His teacher wanted him to practise being quiet. Rigo had to sit quietly for five minutes. It felt like five hours or five days. When the five minutes was up, Rigo went to his desk and sat quietly. It was not easy.

After school, Rigo was waiting for his father when he saw Chris again. “Hey!” he yelled. “Chris! Hey!” The headmaster was walking by. Rigo was sure he was going to get in trouble for his loud voice. He looked quickly at the ground. Maybe the headmaster would keep walking.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

## 参考范文:

*The headmaster stopped and looked at Rigo. He waited at the roadside until Rigo raised his head. Confusingly, it seemed as if the headmaster had found a great treasure. Rigo twisted uneasily. “Do you like acting?” asked the headmaster. “I’ve never seen an actor who speaks louder than you. You are sure to become an extraordinary actor.” “Me? An extraordinary actor?” Rigo couldn’t believe his ears. “Yes, you,” the headmaster said. “A good actor must be able to speak aloud on the stage to make himself heard by every one of his audience. You can do that!” At that moment, Rigo saw his father. “By the way, a good actor knows he should use his quiet voice off the stage,” added the headmaster.*

*He said goodbye to the headmaster and ran to get in his father’s car cheerfully. “Dad, the headmaster said I was going to become an extraordinary actor!” he yelled proudly. The next second, he seemed to remember what the headmaster had told him, and lowered his voice, “Yes, I know when to speak at a loud voice.” His father was surprised at his change. Rigo then told him what happened just now and promised he would practise speaking quietly. Pleased, his father smiled, “Yes, you’re to become an extraordinary actor, for yourself, and for the headmaster.”*

# 读后续写概述

## 一、读后续写是什么

读后续写要求考生在阅读一篇所给的不完整文章的基础上进行想象性和创新性写作。该题将阅读和写作相结合,是一种考查综合写作能力的题型。它既考查考生的阅读理解能力,还考查考生的语言表达能力和逻辑思维、发散思维与创新思维等高阶思维品质,体现了高考的“基础性、应用性、综合性和创新性”。

## 二、读后续写怎样考

### (一)考试形式

在高考中,读后续写题是第四部分的第二节,分值为 25 分,建议用时 30 分钟左右。该题为考生提供一段约 350 词的语言材料,要求考生依据该材料内容和所给段落开头语对给出的部分进行续写,将其发展成为一篇与给定材料有逻辑衔接且情节和结构完整的短文,续写词数限定在 150 词左右。

### (二)考情分析(以近三年新高考 I 卷为例)

年份	卷别	体裁	给文词数	主题	话题
2023	新课标 I 卷	记叙文	324	人与自我	作者在老师的鼓励下由不喜欢写作到喜欢写作的过程
2022	新高考 I 卷	记叙文	347	人与社会	残疾男孩参加越野跑比赛
2021	新高考 I 卷	记叙文	332	人与自我	双胞胎在母亲节给母亲做早餐

### (三)命题特点

所给文章为故事类记叙文,故事线索清晰,人物关系简单(师生关系、家庭成员关系、邻里关系等),故事情节略有起伏,给考生预留的创作空间较多。

### (四)评分标准

1. 从情节、语言和衔接连贯三个维度评价,具体为:

- (1)情节的完整性、与原文的融洽度。
- (2)词汇和语法结构的准确性、恰当性和多样性。
- (3)上下文的衔接和全文的连贯性。

2. 词数少于 120,单词拼写和标点符号错误较多,书写较差以致影响理解的,酌情扣分。

档别与分值	要求
第七档 (22—25 分)	内容丰富合理,富有逻辑性,续写完整,与原文情境融洽度高;词汇和语法结构多样且恰当,表达流畅,语言错误很少,且完全不影响理解;段落间、语句间衔接自然有效,全文结构清晰,前后呼应,意义连贯。
第六档 (18—21 分)	内容丰富合理,富有逻辑性,续写完整,与原文情境融洽度较高;词汇和语法结构比较多样且恰当,表达流畅,有个别错误,但不影响理解;语句间衔接比较有效,全文结构比较清晰,意义比较连贯。
第五档 (15—17 分)	内容基本合理,有一定的逻辑性,续写基本完整,与原文情境相关;词汇和语法结构比较恰当,表达方式不够多样,表达有些许错误,但基本不影响理解;使用了语句间衔接手段,全文结构比较清晰,意义比较连贯。
第四档 (11—14 分)	内容基本完整,但有的情节不够合理或逻辑性不强,与原文情境基本相关;词汇和语法结构简单,有部分语言错误和不当之处,个别部分影响理解;尚有语句衔接意识,全文结构基本清晰,意义基本连贯。
第三档 (6—10 分)	内容和逻辑上有一些重大问题,续写不够完整,与原文有一定程度脱节;所用的词汇有限,语法结构单调,错误较多且比较低级,影响理解;未能有效地使用语句间衔接手段,全文结构不够清晰,意义欠连贯。
第二档 (1—5 分)	内容和逻辑上有较多重大问题,部分内容抄自原文,续写不完整,与原文情境基本脱节;所使用的词汇非常有限,语法结构单调,错误极多,严重影响理解;几乎没有使用语句间衔接手段,全文结构不清晰,意义不连贯。
第一档(0 分)	未作答;内容太少或无法看清;内容全部抄自原文或与题目完全无关。

### 三、读后续写怎样写

首先,仔细阅读题目要求;然后,确定写作步骤和方法。具体步骤如下:

#### 第一步:速读给文,梳理故事要素(约需 8 分钟)

1. 在原文中标记出故事的主要人物,事件发生的时间和地点。
2. 按顺序简要记录主要事件并概括人物的情感;找出故事冲突(扰乱性事件或问题);简要分析人物的性格和给文的语言特点(叙述和描写性语言、人物对话等)。

#### 第二步:分析首句,确定续写方向(约需 2 分钟)

1. 细读所给续写段落的首句,结合故事情节和人物情感确定两段的故事走向。
2. 思考第一段尾句与第二段首句的过渡与衔接,做到自然连贯和融洽。
3. 确定第二段尾句的写法,以画面定格、呼应前文或哲理升华等方式结尾,突出正能量。

#### 第三步:借助给文,完成续写内容(约需 20 分钟)

1. 根据确定的续写方向,一边构思故事情节,一边迅速完成两段的写作。注意每个段落要紧紧围绕一件事来写,通过叙述加描写的方式把主要情节写得丰富、细致。
2. 第一段主要写故事情节的推进,第二段主要写冲突的解决。注意前后两段在时空或人物情感上的转换,保持语言风格与给文一致。同时,要注意书写清晰,确保卷面整洁。

Unit 2 Exploring English

必背 单词	title, sculpt, sculpture, opposing, behaviour, confusing, unique, alarm, reflect, creativity, visible, creative, type, unfamiliar, contact, organization, likely, subway, gas, petrol, apartment, flat, context, addition, resource, misadventure, remind, rather, comment, downtown, boot, entrance, section, exit, actually, downstairs, odd, negative, positive, error, intend, informal, recognise, base, aware
重点 表达	burn up, burn down, wind up, have a frog in one's throat, be aware of, speaking of, wonder at, fill in/out a form, in one's free time, have trouble doing, spend time doing, look forward to doing
重点 知识	1. neither... nor... 2. That is why...句型 3. as... as...
单元 语法	构词法
单元 写作	有关误解的故事
主题 美文 赏读	<p>English now is also spoken as a foreign or second language in South Asia. For example, India has a very large number of fluent English speakers because Britain once ruled India. During that time English became the language for government and education. English is also spoken in Singapore and Malaysia and countries in Africa such as South Africa. Today the number of people learning English in China is increasing rapidly. In fact, China may have the largest number of English learners. Will Chinese English develop its own identity? Only time will tell.</p> <p>现在英语在南亚也被当作外语或第二语言使用。例如，印度有很多说流利英语的人，因为英国曾统治过印度。在那段时间里，英语成为政府和教育的语言。新加坡、马来西亚以及南非等非洲国家也说英语。今天，在中国学习英语的人数正在迅速增加。事实上，中国可能拥有最多的英语学习者。中式英语会发展出自己的特色吗？只有时间会告诉我们答案。</p>



# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

## 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

### (一)核心词汇

1. title *n.* 题目, 标题
2. opposing *adj.* (观点、意见等)相反的, 相对立的
3. behavior *n.* 举止, 行为
4. confusing *adj.* 令人困惑的
5. unique *adj.* 独一无二的, 独特的
6. alarm *n.* 警报器; 闹钟
7. reflect *v.* 显示, 反映
8. creativity *n.* 创造性, 创造力
9. creative *adj.* 创造(性)的
10. have trouble doing sth. 做某事有困难
11. get... doing sth. 使……做某事
12. speaking of 讲起……; 说到……

### (二)阅读词汇

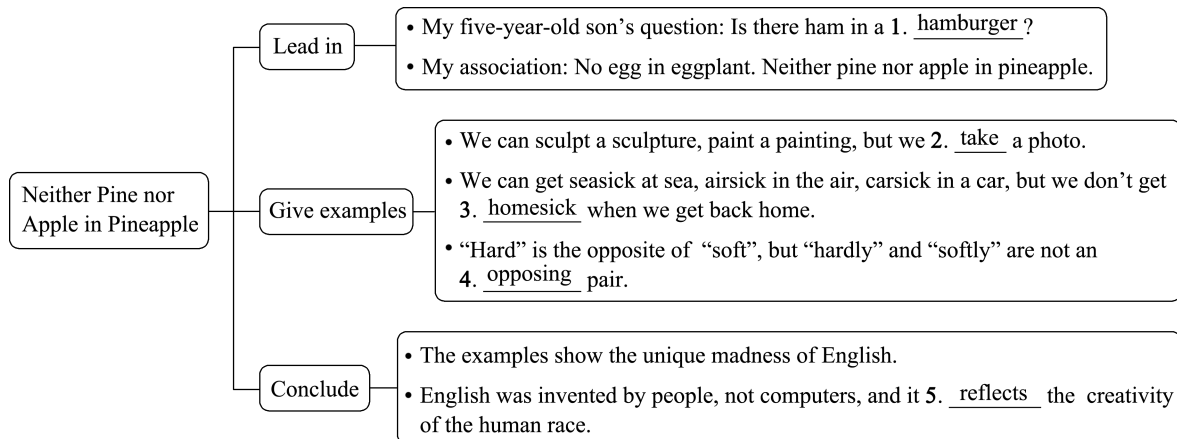
1. ham *n.* 火腿
2. eggplant *n.* 茄子

3. pine *n.* 松树
4. pineapple *n.* 菠萝
5. sculpt *v.* 雕刻, 雕塑
6. sculpture *n.* 雕像, 雕刻品, 雕塑作品
7. seasick *adj.* 晕船的
8. airsick *adj.* 晕机的
9. carsick *adj.* 晕车的
10. homesick *adj.* 想家的
11. capitalized *adj.* 大写的
12. visible *adj.* 看得见的, 可见的
13. burn up 烧毁, 烧尽
14. burn down 烧毁
15. wind up 给(机械)上发条; 使(活动、会议等)结束
16. in one's free time 在某人的空闲时间
17. wonder at 对……感到诧异
18. fill in/out a form 填写表格
19. go off (警报器)突然发出巨响; 离开

## 多维化析文

### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text





### ▶ 文本细节领悟

**Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text**

1. Which of the following words does not have the same meaning as the others?

- A. Seasick.                      B. Homesick.  
C. Carsick.                      D. Airsick.

答案: B

2. How does the author support his/her idea in the text?

- A. By giving examples.  
B. By asking questions.  
C. By analysing.  
D. By exaggerating (夸大) the truth.

答案: A

3. What does English reflect about the human race?

- A. Crazyiness.                      B. Instinct (本能).  
C. Wisdom.                      D. Creativity.

答案: D

### ▶ 语言知识运用

**Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text**

Have you ever asked **1. yourself** (you) why people often have trouble **2. studying** (study) English? I hadn't, until one day my five-year-old son **3. asked** (ask) me whether there was ham in a hamburger. This got me thinking how English can be a crazy language **4. to learn** (learn).

For example, **5. in** our free time we can sculpt a sculpture and paint a painting, but we take a photo. And when we are traveling we say that we are in the car or the taxi, but on the train or bus! While we're doing all this traveling, we can get seasick at sea, airsick in the air and carsick in a car, **6. but** we don't get homesick when we get back home. And speaking of home, why aren't homework and housework the same thing? Even the smallest words can be **7. confusing** (confuse). When you see the capitalized "WHO" in a medical report, do you read it as the "who" in "Who's that?" What about "IT" and "US"?

English **8. was invented** (invent) by people, not

computers, and it reflects the **9. creativity** (creative) of the human race. That is **10. why** when the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible.

**Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them**

1. While we're doing all this traveling, we can get seasick at sea, airsick in the air and carsick in a car, but we don't get homesick when we get back home.

[句子分析]本句是并列复合句。but 前的分句是复合句,含有时间状语从句 While we're doing all this traveling, but 后的分句也是复合句,含有时间状语从句 when we get back home。

[尝试翻译]旅游期间,我们可能会在海上晕船、在空中晕机、在汽车上晕车,但回到家时是不会“晕”家的。

2. You also have to wonder at the unique madness of a language in which a house can burn up as it burns down, in which you fill in a form by filling it out, and in which an alarm is only heard once it goes off!

[句子分析]本句是复合句。三个 in which 都引导定语从句; as it burns down 为 as 引导的时间状语从句; once it goes off 为 once 引导的条件状语从句。

[尝试翻译]你也一定对这门语言独特的疯狂感到诧异。在这门语言中,当一座房子“被烧毁”时可以说 burn up,也可以说 burn down;“填表”时可以说 fill in,也可以说 fill out;闹钟只有在它 goes off (响起)时才被听到!

### ▶ 思维品质培养

**Activity 5: Think and answer the following question**

What do you think of the role that Chinese plays in the world? (Answers may vary.)

With the development of global economy, China is becoming stronger and stronger. The Chinese economy market attracts people all over the world so that the number of people speaking Chinese is getting larger and larger.

## 课后素养评价(六)

## I. 阅读理解

There is an old saying that America and Britain are “two nations divided by a common language”. No one knows exactly who said this, but it reflects the way many British people feel about American English. But are American and British English really so different?

## Vocabulary

The most obvious difference between American and British English is vocabulary. There are hundreds of everyday words that are different. For example, Americans go on vacation while British people go on holiday; New Yorkers live in apartments while Londoners live in flats. There are far more examples than we can talk about here. Fortunately, most Americans and British people can usually guess the meaning through the context of a sentence.

## Past Tense Verbs

You'll also find some differences with past forms of irregular verbs. The past tense of “learn” in American English is “learned”. British English has the option of “learned” or “learnt”. The same rule applies to “dreamed” and “dreamt”, “burned” and “burnt”, and “leaned” and “leant”. Americans tend to use the -ed ending; British people tend to use the -t ending.

## Spelling

There are hundreds of slight spelling differences between British and American English. Noah Webster, an author, politician and teacher, made an effort to reform English spelling in the late 1700s.

Webster wanted to spell words the way they sounded. You can see Webster's legacy (遗产) in the American spelling of words like color (from colour), honor (from honour), and labor (from labour).

## Not So Different After All

British and American English have far more similarities than differences. With the exception of some regional dialects, most British people and Americans can understand each other without too much difficulty. They watch each other's TV shows, sing each other's songs and read each other's books. They even make fun of each other's accents (口音).

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了英式英语和美式英语的不同之处:词汇、动词过去式、拼写。尽管有不同之处,但这并不影响两国人的交流。

1. Which of the following is a group of American words?

- A. Vacation; holiday.
- B. Apartment; flat.
- C. Vacation; apartment.
- D. Holiday; flat.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Vocabulary** 部分中的 “For example, Americans go on vacation while British people go on holiday; New Yorkers live in apartments while Londoners live in flats.” 可知, vacation 和 apartment 都是美国人用的词汇。故选 C。

2. Which word can replace the underlined word “option” in the text?

- A. Choice.
- B. Change.
- C. Structure.
- D. Use.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词后面的 “‘learned’ or ‘learnt’” 可知, 关于 learn 的过去式英国人可以写 learned 也可以写 learnt, 即他们可以在这两种写法中任选一个。由此可以推测出画线词 option 的意思是 “选择”。故选 A。

3. What do we know about British and American English from the last paragraph?

- A. They both have some strange words.
- B. They are affecting people using them.

- C. They connect people of the two countries.  
D. Their differences have little effect on communication.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“British and American English have far more similarities than differences. With the exception of some regional dialects, most British people and Americans can understand each other without too much difficulty.”可知,英式英语和美式英语的相似之处远多于不同之处,除了一些方言,英国人和美国人之间的交流是没有多大问题的。故选 D。

4. What can be the best title for the text?

- A. Ways to Tell British English from American English  
B. Differences between British and American English  
C. Development of British and American English  
D. Difficulty for British People and Americans to Understand Each Other

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“*But are American and British English really so different?*”, **Vocabulary** 部分中的“*The most obvious difference between American and British English is vocabulary.*”, **Past Tense Verbs** 部分中的“*You'll also find some differences with past forms of irregular verbs.*”及 **Spelling** 部分中的“*There are hundreds of slight spelling differences between British and American English.*”可知,本文主要介绍了英式英语和美式英语的不同之处。故 B 项可以作本文的最佳标题。

## II. 七选五

### Why Learn English Through the News?

Learning English through the news is a great way to improve your vocabulary, listening and discussion skills. You can choose from written, audio (音频的), video and live TV news with options both online and offline. 1

#### Clear English

2 Their job is to give facts and summarise events for the public. English news can be easier for

ESL (English as a Second Language) learners to understand because it has a clear context and presentation.

#### Latest information

Modern news media is a constant stream of real-life English conversations and fresh information!

3 When you learn English through the news, you have the chance to find out what is happening in the world right now, make comments and interact with others on the social media.

#### Read, watch, and listen

English news comes in many different forms and this gives you more choices when learning the language. If you prefer reading, there are online newspapers and simpler news websites for ESL students. If you want to improve your listening and vocabulary skills, there are also TV news channels, videos, radio stations and podcasts (播客). 4

#### Relevant (相关的) to you

Fresh news is produced daily on every imaginable topic! 5 All you have to do is look online! If you are not interested in politics and “serious” news, why not focus on sports news or the latest from the music scene?

- A. Popular stories often appear in all of these formats.  
B. English news is worth including in your study plan for the following reasons.  
C. Even the word “news” comes from the Latin term “nova”, meaning “new things”.  
D. An effective way to learn English is by frequently watching English movies.  
E. Most journalists and newsreaders use Standard English and express themselves well.  
F. Most learners of English have difficulties understanding original newspapers and TV news.  
G. Whatever you like, you will always be able to find news articles and stories that are relevant to you.

答案:1~5 BECAG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **title** of a passage gives readers very important information about the main idea of it. 标题
2. The first letter in an English sentence should be **capitalized**. 大写的
3. It's believed that it's language that makes the human race **unique**. 独一无二的, 独特的
4. The rain had stopped and a star or two was **visible** over the mountains. 看得见的, 可见的
5. A **ham** is the upper part of a pig's leg, or the meat from this that has been preserved (腌制) with salt or smoke. 火腿

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>sculpt</u> v. 雕刻, 雕塑	<u>sculpture</u> n. 雕像, 雕刻品, 雕塑作品
	<u>sculptor</u> n. 雕塑家
<u>opposing</u> adj. (观点、意见等)相反的, 相对立的	<u>oppose</u> v. 反对, 对抗, 使对立
	<u>opposed</u> adj. 反对的, 对立的, 敌对的
<u>behavior</u> n. 举止, 行为	<u>behave</u> v. 表现
<u>confusing</u> adj. 令人困惑的	<u>confuse</u> v. 使困惑
	<u>confused</u> adj. 感到困惑的
	<u>confusion</u> n. 混乱, 困惑
<u>reflect</u> v. 显示, 反映	<u>reflection</u> n. 反射; 反映; 映像; 沉思, 深思
	<u>reflective</u> adj. 反射的; 反映的; (指物体表面)反光的; (指人、心情等)深思熟虑的
<u>alarm</u> n. 警报器; 闹钟	<u>alarming</u> adj. 惊人的, 吓人的
	<u>alarmed</u> adj. 惊恐的; 忧虑的; 装有警报的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>creativity</u> n. 创造性, 创造力	<u>creative</u> adj. 创造(性)的
	<u>create</u> v. 创造
	<u>creator</u> n. 创造者, 创作者
	<u>creation</u> n. 创造; 产物

III. 补全短语

1. have trouble (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难
2. in one's free time 在某人的空余时间
3. speaking of 提到, 谈到
4. look out of 向外看
5. burn up/down 烧毁
6. fill in/out a form 填表格
7. go off (警报器)突然发出巨响; 离开
8. wind up 给(机械)上发条; 使(活动、会议等)结束

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: neither... nor...  
Neither is there pine nor apple in pineapple.  
pineapple(菠萝)里既没有 pine(松树), 也没有 apple(苹果)。
2. 句型公式: That is why...句型  
That is why when the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible.  
这就是为什么 stars are out(星星出现)时, 我们能  
看到星星, 而当 lights are out(灯光熄灭)时, 我们  
却看不到灯光。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. confusing adj. 令人困惑的

[教材原文] Even the smallest words can be **confusing**.

就算是最短小的单词都让人费解。

[归纳拓展]

(1) confuse... with/and... 分不清……和……

(2) confused adj. 困惑的; 糊涂的; 不清楚的; 混乱的; 难懂的

be confused about... 对……感到疑惑

(3) confusion n. 困惑; 不确定; 混乱, 骚乱; 辨别不清; 混淆

in confusion 困惑地

名师点拨 ■■■■

-ing 形式的形容词表示“事物”的性质和特征, 意为“……的; 令人……的”; -ed 形式的形容词往往表示“人”所处的状态, 常用来描述人, 意为“感到……的”。另外, 修饰 face, look, expression, voice 等时, 常用-ed 形式的形容词。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I think it's a serious mistake to confuse work with/and life.

② They confused me by asking so many confusing questions. I was totally confused, standing there in confusion, not knowing what to do. (confuse)

(2) 完成句子

I love learning new words, but I am confused about how to remember them well.

我喜欢学习新单词, 但是我对如何记忆单词感到困惑。

### 2. reflect v. 显示, 反映

[教材原文] English was invented by people, not computers, and it **reflects** the creativity of the human race.

英语是人创造的, 不是计算机发明的, 它反映了人类的创造力。

[归纳拓展]

(1) reflect on/upon sth. 认真思考某事

(2) reflection n. 反射; 反映; 映像; 沉思, 深思  
on/upon reflection 经再三思考

be lost in reflection 陷入沉思中

(3) reflective adj. 反射的; 反映的; 反省性的; (指人、心情等) 深思熟虑的; (指物体表面) 反光的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① His face was reflected (reflect) in the big mirror when he passed by.

② On dark nights children should wear reflective (reflect) clothing.

(2) 完成句子

At first I thought it was a bad idea, but on/upon reflection, I realised she was right.

最初我认为那是个坏主意, 但经再三思考, 我意识到她是对的。

### 3. That is why... 句型

[教材原文] **That is why** when the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible.

这就是为什么 stars are out (星星出现) 时, 我们能看见星星, 而当 lights are out (灯光熄灭) 时, 我们却看不到灯光。

[句式分析] That is why... 后接表语从句, 意为“这就是为什么……”。

[归纳拓展]

(1) This/That is/was why... 这/那就是……的原因 (why 引导表语从句, 表示结果)

(2) This/That is/was because... 这/那是因为…… (because 引导表语从句, 表示原因)

(3) The reason why... is/was that... ……的原因是…… (why 引导定语从句并在从句中作状语; that 引导表语从句, 表示原因)

[即学即练]

句型转换

Tom came late for the meeting because he was ill.

→ Tom was ill. That was why he came late for the meeting.

→ Tom came late for the meeting. That was because he was ill.

→ The reason why Tom came late for the meeting was that he was ill.





walked down the road. It took me ten minutes to arrive at the 9. I live eight kilometres away. My e-bike could have broken down 10 along the way. But it didn't. 11, it broke down in the perfect place—off the main road, within walking distance of here. I'm still able to teach my class 12 I'll be able to get it repaired after class. If my e-bike must break down 13, it couldn't be arranged (安排) in a better way."

The students' eyes opened wide, and then they smiled. Mr Wu smiled back. His story had 14 them. He was happy that they had a perfect chance to consider 15 in a new way.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了英语老师 Mr Wu 上班路上电动自行车坏了,但他却称这一天是幸运的。Mr Wu 用这件事来教育学生用新的方式看待幸运。

1. A. proudly B. cheerfully  
C. seriously D. angrily  
B 根据下文中的“Why do you always seem to be so happy, Mr Wu?”可知, Mr Wu 总是非常快乐, 故他兴高采烈地(cheerfully)问学生他们周末过得怎么样。
2. A. busy B. satisfying  
C. terrible D. meaningful  
C 根据下文的“she had her wisdom teeth pulled out and they still hurt”可知, 这个女孩的周末过得很糟糕(terrible)。
3. A. question B. suggestion  
C. decision D. introduction  
A 根据上文的“‘Why do you always seem to be so happy, Mr Wu?’ she asked.”可知, 是女孩问的问题(question)使 Mr Wu 想起了他之前读过的东西。
4. A. fail B. hate  
C. seem D. choose  
D 根据上文的“you have a choice about how you want to spend that day”可知, 你可以选择你想怎么度过这一天。故 Mr Wu 说他选择(choose)高高兴兴的。
5. A. Who B. When  
C. Why D. How  
C 根据上文的“‘And today is my lucky day,’ he added.”及空后的“The whole class were curious.”可知, Mr Wu 说今天他是幸运的, 所以学生们很好奇, 问为什么(Why)。
6. A. walked B. ran

C. drove                      D. rode

D 根据下文的“when my e-bike broke down”可知, Mr Wu 是骑(rode)电动自行车去学校。

7. A. surprised B. bored  
C. impatient D. nervous  
A 根据下文可知, Mr Wu 的电动自行车坏了却说自己幸运, 所以学生们很吃惊(surprised)。
8. A. left B. checked  
C. repaired D. found  
A 句意: 我的电动自行车在上课前一刻钟坏了, 所以我把它留(left)在路边, 拿着书, 沿着道路走去。
9. A. hospital B. school  
C. park D. bank  
B 根据上文的“6 to school as usual.”可知, Mr Wu 花了 10 分钟到达了学校(school)。
10. A. somewhere B. anywhere  
C. everywhere D. nowhere  
B Mr Wu 的电动自行车本来可以在路上任何地方(anywhere)坏掉。
11. A. However B. Also  
C. Instead D. Otherwise  
C 根据上文的“My e-bike could have broken down 10 along the way. But it didn't.”和下文的“it broke down in the perfect place—off the main road, within walking distance of here”可知, Mr Wu 的电动自行车本来可以在路上的任何地方坏掉, 但是它没有。相反(Instead), 它在完美的地方坏掉了——远离主干道, 步行即可到达。
12. A. and B. but  
C. so D. or  
A 根据语境可知, 本空前前后句为顺承关系, 故本空应用 and。
13. A. yesterday B. the other day  
C. today D. tomorrow  
C 句意: 如果我的电动自行车今天(today)一定要坏, 那这样安排就再好不过了。
14. A. hurt B. touched  
C. controlled D. worried  
B 根据上文的“The students' eyes opened wide, and then they smiled.”可知, Mr Wu 说的话触动了(touched)他们。
15. A. dream B. purpose  
C. wish D. luck  
D 句意: 他很高兴他们有一个绝佳的机会用一种新的方式来看待幸运(luck)。

Section Ⅲ Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. If you have any questions about it, you can **contact** me by email. 联系
- 2. Can you guess the meaning of the word from the **context**? 上下文, 语境
- 3. A 24-year-old woman in Nanjing was given a warning ticket for eating food on the **subway**. 地铁
- 4. What **type** of music do you like best and why? 类型, 种类

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>organization</u> n. 组织, 团体, 机构	organize v. 组织, 筹备, 安排
	organized adj. 有组织的, 系统的, 有条理的
	organizer n. (活动等的) 组织者
<u>addition</u> n. 增加物, 添加物	add v. 增加, 补充说
	additional adj. 附加的, 额外的

III. 补全短语

- 1. come across 偶然发现, 偶然遇见
- 2. add... to... 把……加到……
- 3. be short for 是……的简称; 是……的缩写
- 4. be different from 与……不同

IV. 重点句式补全

- 1. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语  
But many of them are formed using other simpler words.  
但其中许多是用其他更简单的词构成的。
- 2. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作定语  
Words formed by combining other words are called compounds...  
由其他单词组合而形成的单词称为复合词……
- 3. 句型公式: as + 形容词原级 + as  
It's not as confusing as it seems...  
它并不像看上去那么难以理解……

任务型课堂

1. addition n. 增加物, 添加物

[教材原文] Each year, many **additions** are made to English dictionaries.

每年英语词典中都会收录许多新的词汇。

[归纳拓展]

(1) in addition 除此之外

in addition to 除……以外(还)

(2) add v. 增加, 添加; 加, 相加; 补充说

add up 合计; 把……加起来

add... to... 把……加到/进……里

add up to 加起来共计/达(不用于被动语态)

add to 增加, 增添

(3) additional adj. 附加的, 额外的, 另外的

[即学即练]

(1) 语段填空

The president said it was not easy to manage a company, adding (add) that the financial crisis

(金融危机) added to the difficulties. The week before, he added up all the expenses and the total added up to more than 100,000 *yuan*.

(2) 完成句子

In addition, we should learn how to get along well with others.

此外, 我们应该学会如何与他人友好相处。

2. as... as...

[教材原文] It's not **as** confusing **as** it seems; usually people from the two countries can understand each other from the context.

它并不像看上去那么难以理解; 通常, 来自这两个国家的人们可以通过语境互相理解。

[归纳拓展]

(1) as... as... 意为“像/和……一样……”, 表示同级比较, 两个 as 之间通常使用形容词或副词的原级。第一个 as 作副词, 第二个 as 作连词, 引导比较状



语从句。as... as...的否定形式为 not as/so... as... (不和……一样……)。

(2)as... as...结构还有以下几种常见形式：

- as+adj.+a(n)+可数名词单数+as...
- as+many+可数名词复数+as...
- as+much+不可数名词+as...

名师点拨

- (1)在“as... as...”结构中,第二个 as 引导的比较状语从句,常常省去与主句相同的部分,只留下相比较的部分。
- (2)在“as... as...”结构中,第二个 as 引导的比较状语从句,常用助动词或情态动词的某种形式代替与主句相同的谓语部分。

[即学即练]

翻译句子

- ①这本书就像我期待的那样有趣。  
This book is just as interesting as I expected.
- ②我没有过去那么忙了。  
I am not as/so busy as I used to be.
- ③她的嗓音像她母亲的一样甜美。  
Her voice is as sweet as her mother's.
- ④他的钱和约翰的一样多。  
He has as much money as John (does).
- ⑤你犯的错误和我犯的一样多。  
You've made as many mistakes as I (have).

语法探究

构词法

「语法感知」

- ①chairman 主席 newspaper 报纸 hometown 家乡 airport 机场 sunrise 日出
  - ②disagree 不同意 incomplete 不完全的 unfair 不公平的 reuse 再利用 telephone 电话
  - ③reader 读者 inventor 发明家 Chinese 中国人 Indian 印度人 artist 艺术家 kindness 和蔼 operation 手术
  - ④hand 手/递 clean 干净的/弄干净 shade 阴凉/遮蔽 taste 美味/品尝
1. ①组中的单词是将两个单词合并在一起,形成一个新的单词。这种构词法被称之为合成法。
2. ②组中的单词都是在各自的词根前加了不同的前缀,如 dis-, in-, un-, re-, tele-等;③组中的单词是在各自的词根后加了不同的后缀,如-er, -or, -ese, -ian 等;②③组中单词的构词法被称之为派生法。
3. ④组中单词的构词法被称之为转化法。

「语法精讲」

一、理解概念

英语中,单词的构成方法主要有三种:合成法(Compounding)、转化法(Conversion)和派生法(Derivation)。合成法是指由两个或更多的词合成一个词。转化法是指单词的一种词性用作另一种词性。派生法是由一个词根加上前缀或后缀构成另一个词。

二、语法规则

(一)合成法

合成词就是由两个或更多的词合成一个词,有时用连字符“-”连接,有时直接写在一起,有时分开写。常见的合成词主要有以下几种:

1. 合成名词

构成方式	例词
名词/代词+名词	blood-test 验血 weekend 周末
名词+动名词	sightseeing 观光 handwriting 书法
形容词+名词	freeway 高速公路 blackboard 黑板
动名词+名词	freezing point 冰点 reading room 阅览室
动词+名词	washroom 厕所 pickpocket 扒手
动词+副词	breakthrough 突破 get-together 联欢会
副词+动词	outbreak 爆发 downfall 垮台

还有一些以其他方式构成的合成名词。如 well-being 健康, by-product 副产品, good-for-nothing 无用之人, go-between 中间人, commander-in-chief 总司令。

2. 合形成容词

构成方式	例词
形容词+ <b>-ed</b> 结尾的形容词	noble-minded 高尚的 good-tempered 脾气好的
形容词+现在分词	good-looking 好看的 fine-sounding 动听的
形容词+名词	high-class 高级的 large-scale 大规模的
名词+形容词	duty-free 免关税的 airsick 晕机的
名词+现在分词	peace-loving 热爱和平的 English-speaking 讲英语的
名词+过去分词	man-made 人造的 snow-covered 被雪覆盖的
副词+现在分词	hard-working 勤劳的 far-reaching 深远的
副词+过去分词	well-behaved 行为端正的 widespread 广泛流传的
数词+名词	four-day 四天的 five-year 五年的

3. 合成副词

构成方式	例词
形容词+名词	sometimes 有时 anyway 不管怎样
副词+名词	indoors 在室内 upstairs 在楼上
介词+名词	alongside 在一边
副词+介词	nearby 附近

4. 合成动词

构成方式	例词
形容词+动词	ill-treat 虐待 whitewash 用石灰水刷白
副词/介词+动词	overcome 战胜 overthrow 推翻
形容词+名词	safeguard 保卫, 捍卫 blackmail 勒索; 敲诈; 要挟

5. 合成介词

构成方式	例词
副词+名词	inside 在……里 outside 在……外

续表

构成方式	例词
介词+副词	throughout 遍及 within 在……之内
副词+介词	into 到……里 upon 在……之上

6. 合成代词

- (1) 代词宾格+**self**: herself 她自己    himself 他自己
- (2) 物主代词+**self**: myself 我自己    yourself 你自己
- (3) 形容词+名词: anything 任何东西  
everything 所有事物

(二) 转化法

把一种词性用作另一种词性而词形不变的方法叫作转化法。

用法	举例	小结
动词转化为名词	Let's go out for a <b>walk</b> . 我们出去散散步吧。 Our <b>builds</b> are similar. 我们的体形相似。 Women have an equal <b>say</b> in everything. 妇女在各方面都有平等的发言权。	英语中, 有的动词可作名词, 有的名词可作动词, 有的形容词可作动词, 这种把一种词性用作另一种词性而词形不变的方法叫作转化法。
名词转化为动词	He <b>backed</b> his car into the garage. 他把车倒进车库。 We <b>lunched</b> at the White's. 我们在怀特家吃的午饭。 Did you <b>book</b> a seat on the plane? 你订好飞机座位了吗?	
形容词转化为动词	Culture has <b>furthered</b> the advance of language. 文化促进了语言的发展。 The train <b>slowed</b> down to half its speed. 火车速度减慢了一半。 We will try our best to <b>better</b> our living conditions. 我们将尽全力改善我们的生活状况。	
形容词转化为名词	The <b>rich</b> do not necessarily live a happy life. 富人并不一定生活得幸福。 She was dressed in <b>blue</b> . 她穿着蓝色衣服。 The <b>old</b> here are living a happy life. 这里的老年人过着幸福的生活。	

名师点拨

有些词的词性转化后,词的发音或重音会发生变化。例如:

export /'eksɜ:t/ *n.* 出口→/ɪk'spɜ:t/ *v.* 出口  
import /'ɪmpɜ:t/ *n.* 进口→/ɪm'pɜ:t/ *v.* 进口  
increase /'ɪnkri:s/ *n.* 增加→/ɪn'kri:s/ *v.* 增加  
permit /'pɜ:mɪt/ *n.* 许可证→/pə'mɪt/ *v.* 准许  
record /'rekɔ:d/ *n.* 唱片; 记录→/rɪ'kɔ:d/ *v.* 记录  
present /'preznt/ *n.* 礼物; 现在 *adj.* 当前的; 在场的, 出席的→/prɪ'zent/ *v.* 赠送

(三)派生法

派生法即由一个词根加上前缀或后缀构成另一个词。

1. 常见的前缀(前缀通常只改变词义,不改变词性,但是也有一些前缀不但改变词义,还改变词性)

前缀	作用或意义	例词
en-	构成动词,表示“置于……之中”“使处于……状态”“赋予”“使”	encourage 鼓励 endanger 危害 enable 使能够 enrich 充实 enlarge 扩大
dis-	构成反义词	disappear 消失 discourage 使泄气 dishonest 不诚实的
in-		inactive 消极的 incorrect 不正确的 indirect 间接的
il-		illegal 非法的
im-	构成反义词	impossible 不可能的 impolite 不礼貌的
ir-		irregular 不规则的 irresponsible 无责任感的
un-		unfit 不适合的 unfair 不公平的 unknown 不出名的
non-		non-smoker 不抽烟的人 non-stop 直达的,不停的
co-	构成名词/动词/副词/形容词,表示“共同,一起,联合”	coexist 共存 co-author 合著者

续表

前缀	作用或意义	例词
extra-	构成形容词,表示“在……之外,超出;非常”	extraordinary 非凡的 extra-large 特大的
inter-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词,表示“在……中,相互”	international 国际的 interaction 相互作用
mis-	构成动词/名词,表示“坏,错,糟糕的”	miscalculate 错误地估计 misfortune 不幸
over-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词,表示“上面;完全地;过分;上方”	overhead 在头上方 overcoat 长大衣
post-	构成名词/动词/形容词,表示“在……后,以后”	post-war 战后的 postgraduate 研究生
pre-	构成名词/动词/形容词,表示“在……前,先于”	prehistory 史前时期 pre-war 战前的
re-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词,表示“又,再,重新”	retell 复述 reappearance 重新出现
super-	构成名词/动词/副词/形容词,表示“上(方);超;极”	supermarket 超市 superheated 过热的

2. 常见的后缀(后缀通常改变词性,构成意思相近的其他词性的词,少数后缀同时会改变词义)

	后缀	意义	例词
名词	-age	……的状态/状况/费用	postage 邮费 shortage 不足
	-an	……地方的人	American 美国人 Korean 韩国人
	-ian	……地方的人, 专家的专家	Egyptian 埃及人 Asian 亚洲人 musician 音乐家
	-ist	……家,……者	artist 艺术家 communist 共产主义者 scientist 科学家
	-ism	……主义	socialism 社会主义 realism 现实主义
	-er	……的人(或物), 具有……的人(或物), 与……有关的人	computer 计算机 farmer 农民 foreigner 外国人
	-or	……的人(或物)	actor 演员 sailor 水手 director 导演 calculator 计算器
	-ese	……国的人; 国的语言	Chinese 中国人; 汉语 Japanese 日本人; 日语
	-ee	受动者, 与……有关的人, 称为……的人	employee 雇员 interviewee 接受采访者
	-eer	与……有关的人	engineer 工程师 pioneer 先锋 mountaineer 登山运动员
	-ess	女……, 雌……, 母……	actress 女演员 hostess 女主人
	-ful	充满……的量	armful(两臂或单臂的) 一抱 handful 一把 spoonful 一匙
	-ment	……的行为/组织	movement 运动 development 发展 government 政府

续表

	后缀	意义	例词
名词	-ness	……的状态、性质或特点	illness 疾病 darkness 黑暗
	-ship	地位, 资格, 职位; 技艺, 技能; 状态, 性质, 品质	friendship 友谊 leadership 领导 professorship 教授职位
	-(t)ion	……的行为或状态	action 行为 creation 创造
	-ure	……的行动或过程; 结果	departure 启程 failure 失败 pleasure 高兴
	-sion	……的行为或状态	conclusion 结论 possession 拥有 impression 印象
	-ty	性质, 情况, 状态	safety 安全 difficulty 困难
形容词	-able	能……的, 应……的; 具有……性质的	acceptable 令人满意的 comfortable 舒服的
	-al	与……有关的	national 国家的 political 政治的
	-ern	……方向的	southern 南方的 northern 北方的 eastern 东方的
	-ful	有……性质的; 充满……的	helpful 有帮助的 careful 仔细的
	-ish	……国家的, 像……似的; 近乎……的	British 英国的 childish 孩子气的
	-ive	具有……性质或倾向的	active 积极的 creative 创造性的 expensive 昂贵的
	-y	充满……的; 有……性质的	cloudy 多云的 windy 有风的 dirty 脏的
	-less	无, 没有	careless 粗心的 harmless 无害的 useless 无用的

续表

形容词	后缀	意义	例词
	-some	引起或易于……的	fearsome 可怕的 tiresome 累人的 quarrelsome 爱争吵的
	-en	由……制成的；像……一样的	wooden 木制的 golden 金黄色的，金质的
动词	-ous	有……性质的	dangerous 危险的 humorous 幽默的
	-(e)n	使，变得	widen 加宽 strengthen 加强 lengthen 加长
	-ify/ -fy	变成，使得	beautify 美化 purify 净化
副词	-ize/ -ise	成为，使像；以……方式说/想/行动、对待等；放在……里	apologize/apologise 道歉 popularize/popularise 宣传
	-ly	以……方式；每隔……时间	perfectly 完美地 suddenly 突然地
	-ward (s)	(表示方向)向……地	forward(s) 向前 outwards 向外 eastward(s) 向东
数词	后缀	意义	例词
	-teen	十几	fourteen 十四 fifteen 十五 sixteen 十六
	-ty	几十	forty 四十 fifty 五十 sixty 六十
	-th	第几	fourth 第四 fifth 第五 sixth 第六

(四) 缩略法

英语单词还有一些次要构成法，常见的两种方法有截短法和缩写。截短法是指把一个词的一部分去掉，构成一个新词。缩写是指把几个词的首字母连

在一起，构成一个新词，包括首字母缩略词和首字母拼音词。

缩略	全称	汉语
ID	identification	身份证明
phone	telephone	电话
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	英国广播公司
UN	United Nations	联合国
VIP	very important person	贵宾
WTO	World Trade Organization	世界贸易组织
AIDS	acquired immunity deficiency syndrome	艾滋病(获得性免疫缺陷综合征)
UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization	联合国教科文组织

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. Their product is friendly (friend) to the environment and popular with customers.
2. My English improved a lot; more importantly, I gained (获得) much confidence (confident).
3. Mr Lee said that the smiles and happiness (happy) of the children gave him great courage every day.
4. The high-speed train that connects the two cities is both fast and comfortable (comfort).
5. He was more than just an English teacher, because he also taught me useful (use) lessons in life.
6. It is necessary to have a physical examination (examine) every year.
7. He will be remembered for his ability and his warmth (warm).
8. Tom was encouraged (courage) by his father to take part in the singing competition.
9. Our government attaches much importance to education now, which enables (able) so many people to be well educated.
10. It was impolite (polite) of you to ask him the personal question in front of so many people.

II. 根据提示补全句子

1. Parents and teachers always think students should

spend more time on their studies, but students themselves think differently (学生们自己不这样认为).

2. She tore up the letter angrily (生气地把信撕掉) and threw it into the dustbin.
3. We fear that we do not have the strength (拥有力

量) and courage to face the truth of our situation.

4. As we know, smoking is harmful to our health (吸烟有害我们的健康).
5. If you deepen your knowledge (加深你的知识) or understanding of a subject, you will learn more about it and become more interested in it.

## 课后素养评价(八)

### I. 词语填空

type; contact; come up with; subway;  
gas; come across; apartment; context

1. You'd better take the subway. It's fast and convenient.
2. Underline unknown words and try to guess their meaning from the context.
3. I'm going to have to find a new apartment pretty soon.
4. We will contact you again if the need arises.
5. Write down the following information: name of product, type, date purchased and price.
6. Gas is now widely used for cooking and heating.
7. He came across this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.
8. Our class came up with a good idea to make better use of used materials.

### II. 单句语法填空

1. He's the president of a large international organisation (organise).
2. The house had a fairly (fair) large garden.
3. It was a relief and I came to a sudden (suddenly) stop just in the middle of the road.
4. I am unfamiliar with the place and the people here.
5. Similarly (similar), when Ron Webster borrowed a book from the library of the University of Liverpool, he forgot to return it, too.
6. But such a small thing couldn't possibly (possible) destroy a village.
7. Most people nowadays are so busy with their lives that they do not have time to enjoy a healthy and balanced (balance) diet.
8. According to the report, young drivers are far more likely to have (have) accidents than older drivers.

9. There's a postage and packing fee in addition to the repair charge.

10. Developing healthy eating habits isn't as confusing (confuse) as many people imagine.

### III. 阅读理解

You may be surprised to learn that English gets 30 to 45 per cent of its words from French. The reason dates back to the year 1066, when Norman troops invaded (入侵) what is now Britain. The Normans were from northern France and spoke French. During the Norman occupation (占领期), French became the language of England's rulers and wealthy class. This lasted for more than 300 years. Other people in England continued to speak English during this period.

Over time, the two languages combined and shared words. Some researchers believe that about 10,000 French words eventually entered the English language. However, although English took many French words, their meanings have not always stayed the same. Sometimes the differences in meanings can be very important, and lead to funny or strange situations if the words are used in the wrong way.

Take, for example, the French word "college". In English, college can often be used in place of the word "university", or sometimes as a school within a university. However, in French, college actually means "middle school", or the level of schooling for students in grades five or six through eight.

There are many other similar words in the two languages with completely different meanings. In English, the word "chat" is a verb which means "to talk casually", but in French, the word "chat" is the word for an animal: a cat.



If an English speaker says someone is jolly, that means they are cheerful or friendly. But in French, “jolie” means someone is good-looking or pleasant to look at. In any case, both are nice things to say to someone.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了英语中存在大量法语词汇的现象。

1. What language did the upper class speak in Britain of Norman times?  
A. English.  
B. French.  
C. Both English and French.  
D. Some unknown language.  
B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“During the Norman occupation (占领期), French became the language of England’s rulers and wealthy class.”可知,在诺曼时期,法语成了英国统治者和富裕阶层的语言。
2. What does a Frenchman mean if he says he likes a chat?  
A. He likes a kind of pet.  
B. He wants to have a talk.  
C. He hates to speak English.  
D. He prefers to chat in French.  
A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“but in French, the word ‘chat’ is the word for an animal; a cat”

可知,在法语中,单词 chat 指的是 cat。由此可以推断出,如果一个法国人说他喜欢 a chat,他的意思是“他喜欢一种宠物”。

3. What is the French word “jolie” used to do?  
A. Replace “jolly” in English.  
B. Describe people’s looks.  
C. Refer to people’s happiness.  
D. Prove the change in French.  
B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘But in French, ‘jolie’ means someone is good-looking or pleasant to look at.’”可知,在法语中 jolie 的意思是“某人长得好看或看上去是令人愉快的”。由此可知,jolie 在法语中是用来“描述人的外表”的。
4. What is the text mainly about?  
A. Comparison between two languages.  
B. Difficulty in grasping English.  
C. French words in English.  
D. Development of English.  
C 主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“You may be surprised to learn that English gets 30 to 45 per cent of its words from French.”和第二段中的“Over time, the two languages combined and shared words. Some researchers believe that about 10,000 French words eventually entered the English language.”可知,本文主要介绍的是英语中的法语词汇。

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. resource *n.* 资料,(教学)资源
2. remind *v.* 提醒,使……想起
3. rather *adv.* 相当,颇
4. comment *n.* 评论
5. downtown *adj.* 在城镇中心区的,在闹市区的
6. entrance *n.* 大门(口),入口(处)
7. section *n.* 区域
8. exit *n.* 出口
9. actually *adv.* 事实上,实际上

10. downstairs *adv.* 在楼下
11. negative *adj.* 消极的,负面的
12. error *n.* 错误,谬误
13. intend *v.* 计划,打算
14. informal *adj.* (书写或言谈)非正式的
15. recognise *v.* 认识,辨认出
16. base *v.* 以……为基础
17. be aware of 意识到,察觉到
18. spend time (in) doing 花费时间做
19. look forward to doing 期待/盼望做



## (二) 阅读词汇

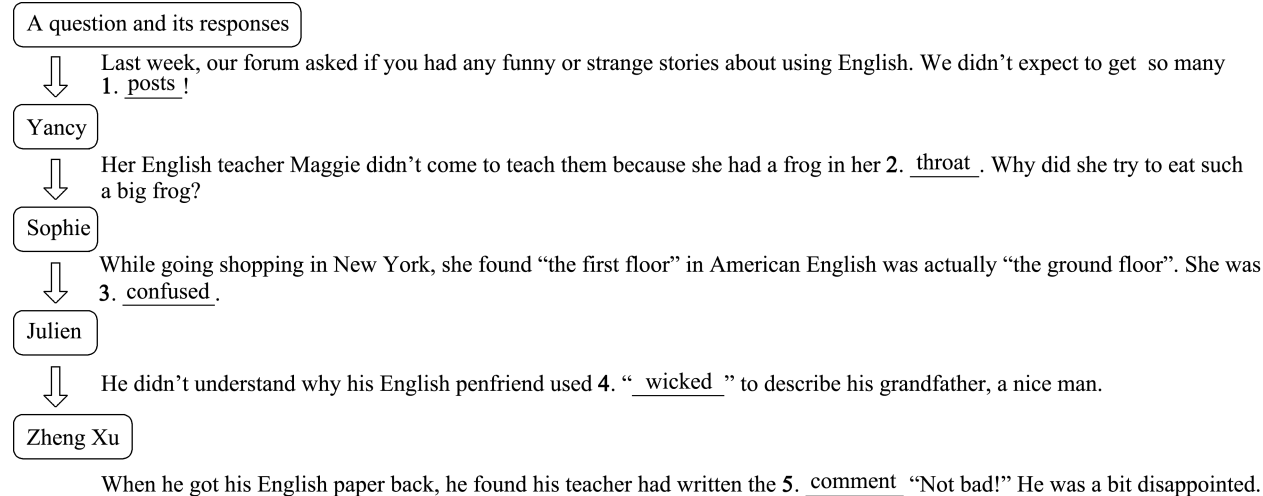
- forum *n.* (因特网上的) 论坛, 讨论区
- misadventure *n.* 事故, 灾难
- frog *n.* 蛙, 青蛙
- throat *n.* 喉咙, 咽喉

- boot *n.* 靴子
- wicked *adj.* 缺德的, 邪恶的; 很棒的, 极好的
- odd *adj.* 奇特的, 古怪的
- have a frog in one's throat (尤因喉咙痛) 说话困难
- play safe 谨慎行事, 避免冒险

## 多维化析文

### 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What does the sentence "We didn't expect to get so many posts!" in Paragraph 1 mean?
  - People are not interested in the topic.
  - People are too shy to give their opinions.
  - We don't think it is interesting.
  - People responded enthusiastically to the topic, which are out of our expectations.

答案:D
- Why couldn't English teacher Maggie teach that day?
  - Because she ate a big frog.
  - Because she was afraid that she had a frog in her stomach.
  - Because she had a sore throat and couldn't speak.
  - Because she was very tired after eating a frog in her throat.

答案:C

- Which statement is NOT true according to the text?
  - "The first floor" in America may be called "the ground floor" in another country.
  - When we say someone is "wicked", we only want to show the person is bad.
  - If you want to go to "the first floor" in America when you enter a building, you should go upstairs.
  - In China, we use "Not bad!" to show something is good.

答案:B
- What's the main idea of the text?
  - An exciting adventure in English learning.
  - Some strange English words difficult to learn.
  - The difference between what we learn in class and in life.
  - Some funny posts about what we should learn in class.

答案:C

### ▶ 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Last week, our forum asked if you had any funny or strange stories about 1. using (use) English. We didn't expect 2. to get (get) so many posts! Here are some of our favourites, to remind us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather different 3. from the English in the outside world!

The first post tells us that an English teacher 4. called (call) Maggie couldn't teach one day 5. because she had a frog in her throat.

The second post tells us that a lady said the 6. shoes (shoe) were sold on the first floor while they were 7. actually (actual) on the ground floor. How 8. confusing (confuse)!

The third post tells us that a man used 9. a negative word about his nice grandfather.

The fourth post tells us that a student spent days preparing and writing his first English paper. But when he got the paper back, he found his teacher 10. had written (write) the comment "Not bad!" He was a bit disappointed.

#### Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Here are some of our favourites, to remind us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather different from the English in the outside world!

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。here 位于句首引起了完全倒装；that 引导宾语从句，作 remind 的直接宾语；在该宾语从句中，we learn in the

classroom 为省略了关系词的定语从句，修饰 English。

[尝试翻译]以下是我们最喜欢的几篇，它们提醒我们，有些在课堂上学到的英语和课堂之外使用的英语真是太不一样了！

2. He told us that Maggie couldn't teach that day COZ she had a frog in her throat.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。that Maggie couldn't...为 that 引导的宾语从句；COZ 相当于 because，引导原因状语从句。

[尝试翻译]他告诉我们玛吉老师那天没法来上课，因为她的喉咙里卡了一只青蛙。

3. When I was looking for the exit, I saw that shoes were actually sold downstairs on the ground floor, not the first floor.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。When 引导时间状语从句，that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]就在我找出口的时候，我发现鞋区实际是在一楼，不是在二楼。

### ▶ 思维品质培养

#### Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Which post do you find most interesting? Why? (Answers may vary.)

Have a frog in her throat. This expression is vivid and amusing, and easy to remember.

2. What should you pay attention to when using English in a foreign country?

Only when you really understand the meaning of the expression can you use it. Otherwise, that can cause misunderstanding.

## 课后素养评价(九)

### I. 单词拼写

1. Some patients actually (实际上) got worse after receiving the treatment.
2. You remind (使……想起) me so much of your brother, especially when you smile.
3. I didn't recognise (辨认出) you in your uniform.
4. I didn't intend (计划, 打算) her to see the painting until it was finished.

5. There is no doubt that such loud noises have a negative (消极的) influence on people's health.
6. Some people pay more attention to the comments (评论) than the quality of products.
7. We are doing our best to finish the task as soon as possible with the limited resources (资源).
8. Will you please show me the entrance (入口) to the museum?

9. This is an informal (非正式的) meeting, so you can just wear what you like.
10. I have received no letters since my arrival, and this does seem rather (相当) odd.
11. There is a fire exit (出口) on each floor of the building.
12. The decision he made was based (以……为基础) upon two considerations.
13. There are too many errors (错误) in your homework, so you'd better correct them before you hand it in.

## II. 短语填空

play safe; be aware of; look forward to; at sixes and sevens; look for

1. I'm looking forward to visiting the art gallery with you next week.
2. If you want to play safe, cut down on the amount of salt you eat.
3. People around the world should be aware of the real situation of water shortage (短缺).
4. It's about time he started looking for a job.
5. I went into my brother's room and got a big surprise when I saw the room was at sixes and sevens.

## III. 完成句子

1. I spent three hours (in) finishing writing the report.  
我花了3个小时写完了这个报告。
2. Here are the conclusions from the experiments.  
下面就是实验的结论。
3. Nodding the head means agreement, while shaking it means disagreement.  
点头表示同意,而摇头表示不同意。
4. It turns out that it's this section that sells what we need for a picnic.  
结果是,这个区域才是卖我们野餐所需要的东西的地方。

## IV. 七选五

### Ways to Learn English Fast and Effectively

With many words and strange ways of spelling that can confuse even those whose primary language is English, English can be one of the most

challenging languages to master. 1. But if you want to learn English quickly and effectively, these tips can be of great help.

2. Having this type of knowledge will be fundamental to your comprehension. Plus, you can choose the course based on your goals and skill level. There are also courses in Travel English, International Business English, and so on. Depending on your end goal, taking a course that matches your objectives can set you on the path to success.

It's also helpful to have a conversation partner.

3. Finding a conversation partner to do real, face-to-face practise will allow you to put your skills to the test. It is said that speaking English regularly helps you master the language far better than reading or writing. 4?

Immersing yourself in the language is essential to quick learning. It's undeniable that there's no better way to learn English than spending time in an English-speaking country. But if that is impossible at the moment, you can still immerse yourself in the language by absorbing all you can find in English.

5. How can you practise English in two different ways each day? Find TV shows, songs, books, movies, videos—anything that is in English will do. Vary the way you practise English to truly immerse yourself in the language.

- A. It's perfectly acceptable to learn at your own pace
- B. You can practise with the recordings of native speakers
- C. Taking a course is a great way to study the basics of English
- D. This will allow you to pick up and remember new words faster
- E. One way to do this is by following the “two ways every day” method
- F. Without communicating in English, you can't identify your weak spots
- G. After all, what's the point of learning a language if you don't use it to communicate

答案:1~5 ACFGE

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. What she did was unforgivable (不可原谅的), but the **odd** thing was he didn't seem to mind. 奇特的, 古怪的
2. The Internet is often used as a **resource** and as a tool for distance learning. 资料, (教学) 资源
3. Their holiday was ruined by a whole series of **misadventures**. 事故, 灾难
4. It was a **rather** difficult maths problem. 相当, 颇
5. He made no **comments** on our suggestion. 评论
6. We thought the figures were correct. However, we have now discovered some **errors**. 错误, 谬误
7. Our family went out, hanging round Wangfujing Street—a **downtown** area of Beijing. 在城镇中心区的, 在闹市区的
8. The lady at the information desk told me that the clothes **section** was on the second floor. 区域

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>remind</u> v. 提醒, 使……想起	<u>reminder</u> n. 引起回忆的事物; 提醒的事物; 通知单
<u>entrance</u> n. 大门(口), 入口(处)	<u>enter</u> v. 进入 <u>exit</u> n. 出口
<u>downstairs</u> adv. 在楼下	<u>upstairs</u> adv. 在楼上
<u>negative</u> adj. 消极的, 负面的	<u>positive</u> adj. 积极的, 正面的
<u>intend</u> v. 计划, 打算	<u>intention</u> n. 打算; 目的, 意图
<u>recognise</u> v. 认识, 辨认出	<u>recognition</u> n. 认出, 识别; 承认, 认可
<u>base</u> v. 以……为基础	<u>basis</u> n. 基础, 根据
	<u>basic</u> adj. 基本的, 基础的
	<u>basically</u> adv. 基本上, 从根本上说

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>aware</u> adj. 意识到的, 明白的	<u>unaware</u> adj. 不知道的, 未意识到的, 未察觉的
	<u>awareness</u> n. 意识; 认识

III. 补全短语

1. ring a bell 听起来耳熟(但记不真切), 有印象
2. small potatoes 微不足道的人或物
3. toilet water 花露水
4. at sixes and sevens 混乱的, 杂乱无章的
5. green fingers 园艺技能, 种植技能
6. pull up one's socks 再加把劲; 奋发图强
7. play safe 谨慎行事, 避免冒险
8. have a frog in one's throat (尤因喉咙痛) 说话困难
9. look for 寻找
10. be aware of 意识到, 察觉到

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句

People say that the British always play safe with what they eat.  
人们都说英国人吃东西很谨慎。

2. 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语

When I first visited New York, I went to a downtown shopping centre to buy some winter boots.  
第一次去纽约的时候, 我去了市中心一家购物中心买冬靴。

3. 句型公式: spend... (in) doing sth.

I spent days preparing and writing my first English paper.  
我花了好几天时间准备和撰写我的第一篇英语论文。

## 任务型课堂

## 1. remind v. 提醒,使……想起

[教材原文] Here are some of our favourites, to **remind** us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather different from the English in the outside world!

以下是我们最喜欢的几篇,它们提醒我们,有些在课堂上学到的英语和在课堂之外使用的英语真是太不一样了!

## [归纳拓展]

(1) remind sb. of sth. 提醒某人某事

remind sb. of sth./sb. 使某人想起某事物/某人

remind sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事

remind sb. that/how/what... 提醒某人……

(2) reminder *n.* 引起回忆的事物;提醒的事物;通知单

## 名师点拨

熟记下面“v.+sb.+of sth.”短语:

cure sb. of sth. 治好某人的病

accuse sb. of sth. 指控某人某事

inform sb. of sth. 通知某人某事

convince sb. of sth. 使某人相信某事

rob sb. of sth. 抢劫某人某物

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① What the teacher had said reminded me of the saying “Where there’s a will, there is a way”.

② Passengers are reminded (remind) that no smoking is allowed on this train.

(2) 一句多译

做完所有的工作后,我们竖起了布告牌提醒人们保护这些树木。

① After getting all the work done, we put up a board reminding people to protect the trees. (现在分词短语作定语)

② After getting all the work done, we put up a board which/that reminded people to protect the trees. (定语从句)

## 2. intend v. 计划,打算

[教材原文] morally wrong and **intending** to hurt people

道德上是错误的并且有意伤害人

## [归纳拓展]

(1) intend to do/doing sth. 打算/想要做某事  
had intended to do... = intended to have done... 原本打算做……

be intended for 打算为……所用,专为……而设计的

(2) intention *n.* 打算;目的,意图

## 名师点拨

intend 的过去完成时,表示本打算做某事,但实际没做成。有类似用法的动词还有 plan, hope, think 等。

## [即学即练]

语段填空

My mother intends ① holding/to hold (hold) a party for my father’s birthday. But she is busy with work, so she intends me ② to prepare (prepare) for it. She requests that all the activities and gifts should be intended ③ for my father. And we both need to keep it secret, because my father has no ④ intention (intend) of holding a birthday party.

## 3. recognise v. 认识,辨认出

[教材原文] **recognise** differences between American English and British English  
识别美式英语和英式英语之间的差异

## [归纳拓展]

(1) recognise... as/to be... 承认/认为……是……  
be (widely) recognised as/to be... 被公认为是……

It is (widely) recognised that... 人们(普遍)认为……

(2) recognition *n.* 认出,识别;承认,认可 beyond recognition 认不出来

## 名师点拨

recognise 作动词时,还有“意识到;承认,认可”之意。

## [即学即练]

单句语法填空

① The village is now recognised as one of the most beautiful and livable tourism villages in Shanxi.

② Komodo National Park, officially recognised (recognise) in 1980, is popular for ecotourism because of its unique biodiversity.

③ I haven't seen Sara since she was a little girl, and she has changed beyond recognition (recognise).

#### 4. aware *adj.* 意识到的,明白的

[教材原文] be **aware** of cultural differences

意识到文化差异

[归纳拓展]

(1) be/become aware of 意识到,察觉到;明白,了解

be aware that... 知道……;察觉到……

make sb. aware of/that... 使某人知道……

(2) awareness *n.* 意识;认识

raise one's awareness (of/about) 增强某人(对……)的意识

(3) unaware *adj.* 不知道的,未意识到的,未察觉到的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Only if you are aware of the importance of English can you learn it well.

② (2023·新课标Ⅱ卷) The program aims to help students develop science skills, environmental awareness (aware), and healthy lifestyles.

(2) 翻译句子

我们应该增强人们的节水意识。

We should raise people's awareness of saving water.

### 多义词汇专练

#### 1. recognise

A. *v.* 认出;辨认出

B. *v.* 承认;意识到

C. *v.* 认可

D. *v.* 赏识;赞赏;公认

① The book is now **recognised** as a classic.

D

② We **recognised** that the task was not easy to finish.

B

③ As soon as he took off his sunglasses, I **recognised** the film star.

A

④ We should **recognise** their work, and encourage them to work harder.

C

#### 2. After the attack, the soldiers returned to their **base**.

A

A. *n.* 基地

B. *n.* 基础

C. *n.* 主要成分

## 写作探究

### 有关误解的故事

#### 「写作指导」

本单元的写作项目是讲述一件有关误解的趣事,该类作文以叙述为主,突出趣事的发生、发展和结果。

#### 1. 基本框架

(1) 开头——交代故事的时间、地点、人物等;

(2) 主体——叙述趣事引发的误会、困惑和惊讶;

(3) 结尾——消除误解。

#### 2. 记叙文的语言特点

(1) 以一般过去时为主,其他时态为辅。合理地使用丰富多彩的动词时态是记叙文的首要语言特点。

(2) 多用动词,尤其是动态性强的行为动词是英语记叙文的又一个明显的语言特点。

(3) 适当使用连接词。

#### 3. 记叙文的写作顺序

记叙文一般是按时间顺序来叙述的,其叙述方法多采用顺叙,也就是按照客观事物发生、发展的先后顺序进行叙述,也可采用倒叙。

#### 「典题示例」

请根据下列故事梗概,用英语写一篇题为“I Don't Know the Time”的故事,可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

故事梗概:一位司机把车停在路边想休息一下。当他躺在座位上闭上眼睛时,一个人走过来,敲了敲车窗并询问时间。司机睁开眼睛看了看表说:“8:05。”接着司机又睡去。可是不久,又有一个人敲窗把他吵醒。“先生,现在几点了?”那人问道。司机又看了看表说:“8:30。”司机怕再次被打扰,休息不



好，就在车窗上贴了一张便条，上面写着“我不知道几点”。他又躺下休息，不久，又有人敲打着车窗说：“先生，现在是 8:45。”

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以 <u>一般过去时</u> 为主
人称	以 <u>第三人称</u> 为主
要点	1. 三次询问的时间 2. 每次询问后司机的反应

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① A driver stopped his car on the street side to have a rest (来休息一下).
- ② He lay down (躺下) in the seat and closed his eyes.
- ③ A person came up and knocked at the window (敲窗户) to ask the time.
- ④ The driver looked at his watch (看了看他的表) and said, “8:05.”
- ⑤ But soon he was waken up (被喊醒) again and saw a second person knocking at the window (正在敲窗户).
- ⑥ In order to have a good rest, he stuck a note on the window (在窗户上贴了一张便条), on which it said, “I don’t know the time.”

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 将 Step 2 中句②③升级为含有 when 引导的时间状语从句的句子。
- When he lay down in the seat and closed his eyes, a person came up and knocked at the window to ask the time.
- ② 将 Step 2 中句④中的分句升级为现在分词作状语。
- The driver looked at his watch, saying, “8:05.”
- ③ 将 Step 2 中句⑤中的分句升级为现在分词作

状语。

But soon he was waken up again, seeing a second person knocking at the window.

Step 4: 连句成篇

I Don’t Know the Time

A driver stopped his car on the street side to have a rest. When he lay down in the seat and closed his eyes, a person came up and knocked at the window to ask the time. The driver looked at his watch, saying, “8:05.” Then he went to sleep again. But soon he was waken up again, seeing a second person knocking at the window. “Sir, do you know the time?” he asked. The driver looked at his watch again, and told him it was half past eight.

In order to have a good rest, he stuck a note on the window, on which it said, “I don’t know the time.” Again he lay down for his sleep. A few minutes later, a third person came and knocked at the window. “Hey, sir,” he said. “It’s a quarter to nine!”

「学以致用」

假如你是李华，去年夏天你和你的父母第一次到美国旅游，因为对“restroom”和“WC”的误解，发生了一件趣事。请你根据以下内容用英语写一篇 80 词左右的小故事。

1. 餐馆吃饭，寻找 WC；
2. 服务生提醒没有 WC，有 restroom；
3. 你的感悟。

参考范文：

Last summer, I went abroad to the USA for a trip with my parents. On the first day my parents went to a restaurant and looked around for a toilet. However, they didn’t find it. When they asked the waitress, she indicated a sign to the “restroom”. But my parents didn’t want to rest. Then I asked for the “WC”, but the girl said they didn’t have one. We were confused. At last, she understood what we wanted. She laughed and so did we. From this experience, I made up my mind to study English harder.



## 课后素养评价(十)

### I. 单句语法填空

1. While travelling in France, I came across a famous actor.
2. The difference may be so small that no one is aware of it.
3. After the typhoon (台风), people found some tall trees, measuring (measure) more than 10 metres, lying on the ground.
4. Being abroad for so many years, I always look forward to hearing (hear) from my family.
5. There followed a list of places where Hans intended to visit (visit).
6. Your grade will be based on four papers and a final exam.
7. Today he is recognised as one of the greatest writers.
8. Some puzzles look difficult but are actually (actual) quite simple.
9. He reminded me to turn (turn) off the lights when I went out.
10. At twenty to six I was waiting by the entrance (enter) to the station.

### II. 完成句子

1. I would rather start early than leave everything to the last minute.  
我宁愿早开始,也不愿意把所有的事情都留到最后才做。
2. It is difficult for us to imagine what life was like for slaves in the ancient world.  
我们很难想象古代社会里奴隶的生活是什么样子的。
3. As you can see, the number of cars on our roads keeps rising these days.  
如你所见,如今路上的汽车数量持续上升。
4. The professor comments that it's rather necessary to learn how to use the learning resources.  
这位教授评论说,学会如何使用学习资源是相当有必要的。

### III. 语法填空

What does “barking up the wrong tree” mean? In this article, let's learn the 1. expression (express).

The phrase “barking up the wrong tree” means 2. following (follow) a mistaken plan of action. The phrase comes from the old hunting (捕猎) practice in which dogs would bark to show they have made other animals up trees unable 3. to run (run) away. Sometimes the dogs were mistaken, and the animals had 4. actually (actual) run away. When this happened, the dogs were barking up the wrong tree.

This phrase first began appearing in 5. written (write) works after the 1820s, and was later widely used by Western writers. It was used to describe a person 6. who/that was following a wrong lead.

Below is an example of how to use the phrase. Recently 7. a friend of mine needed a large amount of money 8. for his new business idea. So he went to an event to meet possible investors (投资者). However, the people he met 9. were (be) those also looking for money. Then we can say that he was barking up the wrong tree!

When using the phrase, avoid these 10. mistakes (mistake) in spelling. For example, don't write it as “barking up in the wrong tree”.

### IV. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是高一学生李华,为了提高学生学习英语的兴趣,你校学生会要举办一场英语晚会。请你用英语给外教 Johnson 写一封信介绍此次活动并邀请他参加,内容包括:

1. 时间:9月20日晚上6:30—8:00;
  2. 地点:学校体育馆(stadium);
  3. 内容:朗诵英文诗歌、演唱英语名曲等。
- 注意:1. 词数80左右;  
2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考范文:

Dear Johnson,

How are you doing?

I'm writing to sincerely invite you to our English party which will be held on September 20th, at the school stadium in order to display our English talent and motivate students' interest in English learning. During the party, you will enjoy various activities, including reciting English poems and singing famous English songs. Besides, I'd like to remind you that the party starts at 6:30 pm and ends at 8:00 pm. So please come on time if it is convenient for you.

Looking forward to sharing with you the pleasant time at the party.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Devin was 16 years old, who was a most hard-working boy. He took things seriously and always went all out for what he was doing. Recently, he had led his soccer team to the big game—Championship game, which was scheduled on Thursday afternoon.

For Devin, Thursday would be huge—the big soccer game in the afternoon, and the school's autumn concert in the evening. Ms Poltis had chosen him to sing a brief solo. Devin couldn't wait till Thursday.

As the team gathered after daily training on Tuesday afternoon, Coach said, "Be here by 6:30 on Thursday to warm up." "Six thirty?" Devin asked. That didn't sound right. Coach explained that it would be a night game and that they would play under the lights.

Devin's heart sank. The concert was at 7:00, which was almost the same time as the game. He couldn't possibly do both. He sat on the bench, pulling off his cleats (球鞋). His teammates were super excited. They were on the edge of a champion,

and Devin was a big reason why. He led the league in scoring, and his soccer knowledge made him like a coach on the field. He couldn't let his team down by skipping the game.

Devin frowned (皱眉). He would tell Ms Poltis in the morning. There were other kids who could sing the solo. He wasn't the best singer anyway, and he knew it.

That night, Devin lay in bed, staring at the ceiling. "No matter how hard the struggle, I will never let you down..." The lyrics of the solo flew into his mind. The solo was only four lines in the middle of a song that the entire choir would sing, but every time he sang the song, he would be full of strength to carry on. His team was counting on him. The soccer game was a perfect excuse. But so was Ms Poltis. It was a long time before he fell asleep.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

参考范文:

In the morning, hardly eating any breakfast, Devin went to school and straight to the music room. Noticing Devin looked worried, Ms Poltis let him sit down and asked if he was nervous for the concert. Devin looked up at her, eyes filled with tears. Ms Poltis smiled warmly and told him it was no secret that several other choir members had better singing voices than he did, but she chose him because he worked hard, like the person in the song. "Don't be nervous. Be proud," Ms Poltis cheered him up.

The big day came and so many people came to watch tonight. Devin had made a difficult choice. He liked the song and he appreciated how kind Ms Poltis always was. There would be other Championship games. He told Coach he had to miss the game and gave advice to his teammates on how to work together. The bright lights came on. Devin stayed calm, singing with confidence. "No matter how hard the struggle..." Devin finished the solo and smiled at Ms Poltis. He was proud of the choice he made.

## 阶段综合提升(一)

## Unit 1—Unit 2

## I. 阅读理解

## A

## Job Chances in Top Schools

## Throughout China

Interested in teaching in a foreign country? Schools all over China are looking for skilled teachers interested in teaching English. There are chances all over the country. Apply today!

## Necessary conditions

Native speaker of English

BA degree or higher (English and Education major preferred)

Teaching experience is preferred, but not required.

Must be a citizen of one of the following countries: Australia, Canada, Ireland, South Africa, New Zealand, the United States, or the United Kingdom.

## Pay to be offered

From \$1,800 to \$2,300 a month depending on conditions and experience

Pays differ depending on schools. Benefits differ between employers, but the following benefits must be offered:

FREE apartment with furniture

Overtime pay

10—14 days of paid vacation

Medical insurance—generally half provided

Round-trip ticket

## How to apply

To apply, only send us the following information:

Resume/Date of Birth/Recent picture

Once we receive your information, we will get you into our job matching lists. When a match is recorded, we will get in touch with you for an interview. Click on the following apply.

Now button to offer your resume and required documentation.

For any questions, send us an e-mail at [primejobs@teachers.com](mailto:primejobs@teachers.com).

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了要招聘的英语教师的具体要求、薪水待遇以及申请方式等内容。

1. What subject will the one who gets the job teach?

- A. French. B. English.  
C. Chinese. D. German.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Throughout China** 部分中的“Schools all over China are looking for skilled teachers interested in teaching English.”可知,中国的学校正在招聘英语教师,也就是说获得这份工作的人需要在中国教英语。故选 B。

2. What can we learn from the passage?

- A. A Japanese can't apply the job.  
B. A Japanese can apply the job at any time.  
C. A Japanese can get more benefits from the job.  
D. A Japanese can get more medical insurance from the job.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Necessary conditions** 部分中的“Native speaker of English... Must be a citizen of one of the following countries: Australia, Canada, Ireland, South Africa, New Zealand, the United States, or the United Kingdom.”可知,申请者必须是来自澳大利亚、加拿大、爱尔兰、南非、新西兰、美国或者英国,且以英语为母语的人才可以申请这个职位。所以日本人是不能申请这一工作的。故选 A。

3. What will happen if you get the job and take the vacation for ten days?

- A. You will be fined.  
B. You will not get paid.  
C. You will be paid as usual.  
D. You will be paid with overtime pay.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Pay to be offered** 部分中的“10—14 days of paid vacation”可知,获得这份工作的人有10—14天的带薪假期,在这段时间内休假仍然有工资。故选 C。

## B

When I lived in Spain, some Spanish friends of mine decided to visit England by car. Before they left, they asked me for advice about how to find accommodation (住所). I suggested that they should

stay at “bed and breakfast” houses, because this kind of accommodation gives a foreign visitor a good chance to speak English with the family. My friends listened to my advice, but they came back with some funny stories.

“We didn’t stay at bed and breakfast houses,” they said, “because we found that most families were away on holiday.”

I thought this was strange. Finally I understood what had happened. My friends spoke little English, and they thought “VACANCIES” meant “holidays”, because the Spanish word for “holidays” is “vacaciones”. So they did not go to houses where the sign outside said “VACANCIES”, which in English means there are free rooms. Then my friends went to houses where the sign said “NO VACANCIES”, because they thought this meant the people who owned the house were not away on holiday. But they found that these houses were all full. As a result, they stayed at hotels!

We laughed about this and about mistakes my friends made in reading other signs. In Spanish, the word “DIVERSION” means fun. In English, it means that workmen are repairing the road, and that you must take a different road. When my friends saw the word “DIVERSION” on a road sign, they thought they were going to have fun. Instead, the road ended in a large hole.

English people have problems too when they learn foreign languages. Once in Paris, when someone offered me some more coffee, I said “Thank you” in French. I meant that I would like some more. However, to my surprise the coffee pot was taken away! Later I found out that ‘Thank you’ in French means “No, thank you.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了由于语言差异而造成误解的故事。

4. What aspect did my Spanish friends want advice in?
- Driving their car on English roads.
  - Going to England by car.
  - Finding places to stay in England.
  - Learning English.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Before they left, they asked me for advice about how to find

accommodation (住所).”可知,作者的西班牙朋友想要作者给他们提供一些在英国找住处的建议。

5. Why did I suggest that they stay at “bed and breakfast houses”?
- Because it would be much cheaper than staying at hotels.
  - Because it would be convenient for them to have dinner.
  - Because they would be able to practise their English.
  - Because there would be no problem in finding accommodation there.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“... because this kind of accommodation gives a foreign visitor a good chance to speak English with the family.”可知,作者建议他的西班牙朋友们住“住宿加早餐”的房子是因为这是个很好的练习他们的英语的机会。

6. What does “NO VACANCIES” mean in English according to the passage?
- Free rooms.
  - No free rooms.
  - Not away on holiday.
  - Holidays.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“‘So they did not go to houses where the sign outside said ‘VACANCIES’, which in English means there are free rooms.”可知,在英语中“VACANCIES”的意思是“有空的房间”,因此“NO VACANCIES”在英语中的意思是“没有空的房间”。

7. When someone offered me more coffee and I said “Thank you” in French, what did I mean?
- I wanted them to take the coffee pot away.
  - I didn’t really want any more coffee.
  - I wanted to express my politeness.
  - I really wanted some more coffee.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Once in Paris, when someone offered me some more coffee, I said ‘Thank you’ in French. I meant that I would like some more.”可知,作者想再要些咖啡。

### C

It’s time to go back to high school. Students are excited about the new beginning. But for many kids, the first day is more about friends than classes, and

maybe with good reason. On that day, the teacher takes attendance, hands out books and describes the teaching plan. If a student hears the same things in seven classes, you can't blame (责备) them for thinking it's going to be another long year. When the high schoolers' parents ask what they did in school, it's pretty likely that the answer will be "Nothing".

It doesn't have to be this way. Last January, Jessica Johnson and Charlotte Jenkins, two ninth-grade physics teachers, suggested a school-wide movement called Make My Day to improve the first day of classes, and many teachers have changed their plan for the first class of a new term because of this.

One English teacher asks students to write 77 words about what they want to get out of her class. Then she reads their responses (回答) out loud. She keeps the responses until the last day of the school year when she hands them back to students so they can see if they achieved what they wanted. After encouraging kids with a year-long game, she begins the English course.

On the first day of science, a teacher gives students 30 minutes to build something to improve people's lives. A history teacher organises a debate on whether Swiss cheese is better than cheddar. In maths class, another teacher puts students in groups of three, and gives them six minutes to come up with as many answers as possible to the question, "What is maths good for?"

The new class activities are part of our school wide movement to improve the first day of classes. Many teachers choose to use creative ways to encourage kids from day one. And all students seem to enjoy the changes. Quite a few parents told me that their kids said, "I think English (or maths or biology or Spanish) is going to be great!"

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了高中开学第一天,各科老师如何让第一节课变得有趣。

8. Which best describes the class on the first day of school in Paragraph 1?
- A bit strange.
  - Too boring.
  - Really wonderful.
  - Quite challenging.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的 "On that day, the teacher takes attendance, hands out books and describes the teaching plan... When the high schoolers' parents ask what they did in school, it's pretty likely that the answer will be 'Nothing'." 可知,学生在七节课上听到同样的事情,应该觉得是无聊的。故选 B。

9. What is mentioned about Make My Day?

- It was a city-wide movement.
- It has been done for many years.
- It was the idea of two PE teachers.
- It was attended by the whole school.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "Last January, Jessica Johnson and Charlotte Jenkins, two ninth-grade physics teachers, suggested a school-wide movement called Make My Day to improve the first day of classes" 可知,Make My Day 是全校学生都参加的活动。故选 D。

10. What do the teachers in Paragraph 4 have in common?

- All ask students to work in groups.
- All choose to do something exciting.
- All hold discussions on teaching plans.
- All try to improve students' creativity.

B 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,本段提到的老师的共同点是所有老师都选择做一些令人兴奋的事情。故选 B。

11. What is the author's attitude to the movement?

- She shows little interest in it.
- She feels surprised at it.
- She is worried about it.
- She supports it.

D 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知,所有的学生似乎都喜欢这些变化,家长也告诉作者,他们的孩子认为某一学科会很棒。由此推断,作者对开学第一天的活动是支持的。故选 D。

## D

As an English teacher, I found that English slang (俚语) can be more difficult for those who learn English as a second language to understand. This became clear when I was talking to one of my students, Cathy, in Japan. "Excuse me, Miss White. I want to go to buy a notebook outside the school." "It's bucketing outside," I said. It is an English slang expression which means "It is

raining.” However, she didn’t seem to understand what I said.

The point I’m trying to get across is that being puzzled about English slang in the beginning is rather natural because it is what makes the language special. But learning some slang is a fantastic way of understanding the culture of a country. English does have some interesting slang. Here is some of my favourite slang which is common in Northern Ireland.

To keel over: If someone keels over, it basically means that he/she has fallen over because he/she has passed out or died.

To be in bed with your head: This is used to describe someone who has gone to bed because he/she has a headache.

To upset the apple cart: This means that someone has caused trouble or upset someone’s plans.

Dead on: This means “exactly right”, “perfect”, or shows that someone agrees with what you’ve said.

Slang can be difficult to learn but it’s really impressive when you get it right! Slang also helps you sound friendly, so it’s great for making friends. If you can use some of these English expressions in a conversation, people will be amazed!

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了英语俚语的作用,同时解释了几个英语俚语的意思。

12. How did Cathy feel when the author said “It’s bucketing outside.”?

- A. She was unhappy.
- B. She was surprised.
- C. She was worried.
- D. She was puzzled.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“However, she didn’t seem to understand what I said.”可知,作者说“It’s bucketing outside.”的时候,Cathy好像不理解。由此可推断出,Cathy很困惑。故选D。

13. What does the author think of English slang according to Paragraph 2?

- A. It tells us the history of a country.

B. It is created by language teachers.

C. It shows the culture of a country.

D. It is used to impress foreigners.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“But learning some slang is a fantastic way of understanding the culture of a country.”可知,学习一些俚语是理解一个国家的文化的神奇的方法,俚语可以展示一个国家的文化。故选C。

14. If someone says “Does the word mean ‘elevator’?”, what could you say?

- A. I keel over.
- B. You’re dead on.
- C. You upset the apple cart.
- D. I’m in bed with my head.

B 推理判断题。根据第六段的内容可知,Dead on的意思是“非常正确”,“完美”,或者表明某个人同意你的观点。由此可推断出,当一个人说“Does the word mean ‘elevator’?”时,你就可以说“Dead on。”

15. In which part of a newspaper can we read this text?

- A. Culture.
- B. Science.
- C. Travel.
- D. Lifestyle.

A 文章出处题。本文介绍了英语俚语的作用,同时解释了几个英语俚语的意思,属于语言文化领域。故选A。

## II. 七选五

### Simple Ways to Improve Your Written English

Many people think it is really difficult to improve their writing in English. Don’t worry, though. Here are some simple steps that you can take to improve your written English.

#### • Increase your vocabulary.

To express yourself clearly, you need a good active vocabulary. That’s not just being able to know lots of words—it means actually being able to use them correctly. 16

Tip: When you learn a new word, try to learn all the forms of that word.

#### • 17

People often say that we learn to write best by reading. Reading in English is useful in many ways. It is a great way to get an idea of the different styles of writing and see how to use words properly.

Tip: 18 Learning shouldn't be boring. Read each text several times to make sure you understand how to use new words and expressions in the text.

• **Improve your grammar.**

Grammar is very important because it improves the quality of your writing.

Tip: 19 The first time, look for general mistakes and the second time look for mistakes with the grammar point you are studying at the moment.

• **Just do it!**

The best way to improve your writing is to get a pen and paper and write. Be prepared to write several versions (版本) of each text. 20

- A. Know your readers.
- B. Read widely and often.
- C. Always check your writing twice.
- D. Remember, practice makes perfect!
- E. Choose books or articles that interest you.
- F. Use simpler language and shorter sentences to show your ideas.
- G. Do this by learning new words with example sentences, not just word lists.

答案: 16~20 GBECD

III. 完形填空

One year my children came home from school asking where we were going on the summer vacation. I couldn't 21 to take them anywhere but I didn't want to tell them that so I just said, "It's a surprise!" They were 22.

I called several amusement 23 to see if there was a half-price event during the summer but no such 24. I tried everything, with no success, so I called some of the other mums to find that most were in the same situation that I was. We decided to 25 something fun for our kids to do. We had a meeting, all five of us, and 26 what is now called a "playcation".

One mother was a 27, so on Mondays the

kids would all go to her house. They would play games using plants and 28. They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.

Another mother had novel readings on Tuesdays. She asked some questions about the novels. The kid who answered 30 got a penny, which they all turned in at the end to buy their goodie bags (礼品袋).

At our house on Wednesdays, I made 31 obstacle training with my spare tires. The kids also walked a balance beam and raced through large cardboard boxes taped together.

On 32 they had arts and crafts across the street. Fridays were 33 by a wonderful single dad with a metal detector (金属探测器) who took everyone out to play treasure 34.

The summer was a big 35. Okay, it wasn't Disney World, but the kids didn't miss anything. My son actually asked me, "Can we do this again next year?"

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和几个朋友生活很拮据,暑假无法带她们的孩子出去玩,但是她们通过自己的努力,给了孩子们一个别样的暑假,这个暑假活动安排非常成功且有意义。

21. A. sacrifice                      B. offer  
C. select                          D. afford  
D 根据下文中的"I called several amusement 23 to see if there was a half-price event during the summer"可知,作者生活很拮据,所以这里意思是"我"不能负担得起(afford)带他们去任何地方玩。
22. A. disappointed                B. satisfied  
C. shocked                        D. delighted  
D 根据上文中的"It's a surprise!"可知,孩子们听到暑假会有惊喜,自然很开心(delighted)。
23. A. schools                        B. shops  
C. parks                            D. libraries  
C 根据下文"if there was a half-price event during the summer"可知,作者是给游乐园(parks)打电话询问优惠事宜。
24. A. hope                          B. luck  
C. attitude                        D. hobby  
B 根据下文的"I tried everything, with no



success”可知,作者尽力了,但是没有成功。由此可知,作者说自己运气(luck)不好。

25. A. come up with      B. face up to  
C. look forward to      D. step away from  
A 根据下文可知,作者和其他的妈妈们都决定为她们孩子想出(come up with)一些有趣的事情去做。
26. A. discovered      B. enjoyed  
C. created      D. controlled  
C “我们”创造了(created)一个被称为“playcation”的活动。
27. A. teacher      B. doctor  
C. gardener      D. grocer  
C 根据下文“They would play games using plants and 28. They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.”可知,这位母亲是一位园艺爱好者(gardener)。
28. A. books      B. vegetables  
C. sweets      D. toys  
B 根据下文“They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.”可知,他们用植物和蔬菜(vegetables)做游戏。
29. A. guessed      B. watched  
C. affected      D. felt  
B 他们也种植蔬菜,并且在整个夏天观察(watched)它们的生长。
30. A. easily      B. patiently  
C. correctly      D. hurriedly  
C 根据下文的“got a penny”可知,回答正确(correctly)的小孩会获得一美分的奖励。
31. A. indoor      B. outdoor  
C. mountain      D. speech  
B 根据下文“The kids also walked a balance beam and raced through large cardboard boxes taped together.”可知,作者用备用轮胎对孩子们进行了户外(outdoor)障碍物训练。
32. A. Thursdays      B. Saturdays  
C. Sundays      D. Mondays  
A 上文依次介绍了孩子们在星期一、星期二、星期三这三天的活动安排,下文介绍了周五的活动,故本空应介绍孩子们在星期四(Thursdays)进行的活动。
33. A. hosted      B. forced

C. avoided      D. forbidden

A 每周星期五由一位单身父亲举办(hosted)这次活动。

34. A. hiding      B. making  
C. hunting      D. donating  
C 这位单身父亲用一个金属探测器,带着孩子们外出去玩寻找(hunting)宝物的游戏。
35. A. failure      B. challenge  
C. business      D. success  
D 根据下文“Okay, it wasn't Disney World, but the kids didn't miss anything. My son actually asked me, 'Can we do this again next year?'"可知,这个暑假非常成功(success)。

#### IV. 语法填空

English language is closely related to the Frisian, German and Dutch. England is the first country **36. to speak** (speak) English and now English is the main language of the United States, the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, Ireland, New Zealand, and many island nations in the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean. It is also an **37. official** (office) language of India, the Philippines, Singapore, and many countries in sub-Saharan Africa **38. which/that** include South Africa. English is the first choice of foreign **39. languages** (language) in most countries around the world. **40. A/One** third of the world's population now use English, which is **41. amazing** (amaze) to us.

English belongs **42. to** the Indo-European family of languages and is therefore related to most other languages spoken in Europe and Western Asia from Iceland to India. During the course of hundreds of years, English words have been **43. slowly** (slow) changed from the forms **44. found** (find) in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Russian and German to forms, as in Chinese and Vietnamese. The German and Chinese words for the word “man” **45. are** (be) a typical example. German has five forms: Mann, Mannes, Manne, Männer, Männern. Chinese has one form: ren. English stands in between, with four forms: man, man's, men, men's.

#### V. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

“深化文明交流互鉴,推动中华文化更好走向世界

界”是二十大报告中的重要内容。假如你是李华,你的英国朋友 Mary 打算到中国留学,给你发邮件,向你询问学习汉语的方法,请你写封邮件给她回复。要点如下:

1. 学好汉语的建议;

2. 你的祝愿。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考范文:

Dear Mary,

I am glad to know that you are coming to China for further study. As you are eager to learn Chinese well within a short time, I would like to offer some suggestions to you.

Firstly, you should have passion to learn Chinese. Besides, watching Chinese movies and listening to Chinese songs can make the learning process much more interesting. As a famous saying goes, "Practice makes perfect." You should keep practising it as much as possible. Why not find a native speaker as a language partner, and meet him/her on a regular basis?

I do hope you will find these proposals practical. Best wishes!

Yours,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Robert and Henry were two friends in the same class. They always played together and went home together. One day Robert and Henry were going home from school, when, on turning a corner, Robert cried out, "A fight! Let's go and see!"

"No," said Henry. "Let's go quietly home and not meddle with (插手) this quarrel. We have nothing to do with it and may get into trouble. Also our parents are expecting to have dinner with us together at home and I don't want them to worry about me."

"You are a coward (胆小鬼), and afraid to go," said Robert, and he ran off. Henry went straight

home, and in the afternoon went to school as usual.

But Robert had told all the boys that Henry was a coward, and they laughed at him a great deal. From then on, they looked down upon Henry and didn't want to play with him together.

Henry was sad but he wasn't angry with Robert for his rude behaviour, because he learned that true courage is shown most in bearing misunderstanding when it was not deserved, and that he ought to be afraid of nothing but doing wrong. Thus, he just ignored the other boys' laughter and continued to go to school and study as well. However, Robert didn't invite Henry to go home with him anymore. Instead, he had some other boys who also thought Henry was a coward. Every day after school, they didn't go home directly but went to the river or somewhere to play games and had a lot of fun.

A few days later, Robert was bathing with his new friends in a river, and got out of his depth. He struggled, and screamed for help, but all in vain. The boys who had called Henry a coward got out of the water as fast as they could, but they did not even try to help him.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

参考范文:

Robert was fast sinking. It seemed as if Robert would be drowned. Just at the moment, Henry happened to be passing by. Hearing the screams, Henry ran to the riverside, threw off his clothes and jumped into the water without hesitation. He reached Robert just as he was sinking the last time. By great effort, and with much danger to himself, he brought Robert to the shore.

Thus, Robert's life was saved. Robert and his new friends were ashamed at having called Henry a coward. They realised that Henry had true courage. They said sorry to Henry for their rude behaviour and asked for his forgiveness. Henry forgave them happily. He and Robert were friends again and they went home together as usual. From this, Robert learned what true courage was: never be afraid to do good, but always fear to do evil.

## 读后续写技能养成

## 人物描写之外貌描写

## 「技能概述」

1. 外貌描写:是指对人物的体貌特征(包括人物的容貌、衣着、体型、姿态等)进行描写,以揭示人物的主要特点,表达作者的爱憎情感,加深读者对人物的印象。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,可以抓住人物的性别、年龄、职业或民族等特征来进行详细的描写。描写时,还可以使用比喻和夸张等修辞手法。

## 「范例体悟」

I watch him as he makes his way towards the stage. He is of medium height and has blonde hair that falls in waves over his forehead. The shock of the moment is registered on his face, and you can see his struggle to remain emotionless, but his blue eyes show the alarm I've seen so often in prey. Yet he climbs steadily onto the stage and takes his place.

找出文中描写人物外貌的词汇并写下来。

medium height; blonde hair that falls in waves;  
blue eyes

## 「词句储备」

## I. 好词积累

## (一)脸型

1. round *adj.* 圆的
2. square *adj.* 方的
3. long *adj.* 长的

## (二)体型

4. thin *adj.* 瘦的
5. fat *adj.* 胖的
6. slim *adj.* 苗条的

## (三)头发

7. straight *adj.* 直的
8. curly *adj.* 卷曲的
9. pigtail *n.* 辫子
10. crew cut *n.* 平头(发型)
11. bald *adj.* 秃头的
12. jet-black *adj.* 乌黑发亮的
13. blond(e) *adj.* 金(黄)色的
14. golden *adj.* 金色的
15. grey *adj.* 灰(白)色的
16. shoulder-length *adj.* 齐肩的

## (四)五官

17. deep-set *adj.* (眼睛)深陷的;深邃的
18. eyelash *n.* 睫毛
19. eyebrow *n.* 眉毛
20. flat *adj.* 扁平的
21. hooked *adj.* 钩状的

## (五)服饰

22. elegant *adj.* 优雅的
23. fashionable *adj.* 时髦的
24. tidy *adj.* 整洁的
25. well-dressed *adj.* 衣着讲究的

## II. 佳句背诵

1. When he laughs, we see his even teeth.  
他笑时,我们看见他有一口整齐的牙齿。
2. His chin is covered by a thick and short beard.  
他下巴上长满浓而短的胡须。
3. She eats too much these days, so her face is getting round.  
她最近吃得太多,所以她的脸变圆了。
4. His eyes are deep-set because he has worked till midnight for a long time.  
他眼睛深陷,因为他很长时间以来一直工作到半夜。
5. Mother was now getting old and her hair was almost entirely white although she was still under fifty.  
母亲一天天见老,虽然不到五十岁,但她的头发已几乎全白了。

## 「技能达标」

## I. 完成句子

1. Jenny is very pretty, of slim build, with blue eyes.  
珍妮非常漂亮,身材苗条,有一双蓝眼睛。
2. There is still a heart of loving beauty under her wrinkled face.  
她沧桑的面容下依然保持着一颗爱美的心。
3. He was a kind old man with grey beard, blue eyes, and a voice that the birds loved.  
他是一位和蔼、善良的老人,长着灰白色的胡子,有一双蓝色的眼睛和小鸟都喜欢的嗓音。
4. Her waist was slender, her hair thick and jet-black, her eyes liquid and her eyebrows drawn out towards her temples.  
她腰肢纤细,头发浓密、乌黑,两眼如秋水般明丽,双眉画入鬓角。
5. She is neither tall nor short, with a round face, a wide mouth and humorous grey eyes, looking very kind.  
她不高不矮,一张圆脸,一张大嘴,一双滑稽的灰眼睛,看上去很和蔼可亲。

## II. 用人物外貌描写完成下面的语段

A young lady was coming towards him. 1. Her figure was long and slim(她的身材修长且苗条); 2. her blonde hair lay back from her ears(她的金发从耳朵后面垂下来); 3. her eyes were blue as flowers(她的眼睛蓝蓝的,美如鲜花); 4. her lips and chin had a gentle firmness(她的嘴唇和下巴温柔而坚定), and 5. in her pale green suit/clothes(穿着淡绿的衣服) she was like springtime coming alive. He went towards her, entirely forgetting to notice that she was not wearing a rose. As he moved, 6. a middle-aged woman(一位中年妇女) whispered, "Going my way, Sir?"

Unit 3 Family matters

主题语境

人与自我——家庭生活

必背 单词	character, approach, chat, focus, assume, respect, studio, court, ignore, professional, suit, talent, option, generation, gap, currently, regularly, responsible, memory, nowadays, skin, jogging, slim, nation, aim, issue, theme, observe, range, apologise, stress, impact, strength, admire, judge, settle, series, onto, track, media, obviously, feature, typically, individual, style, extra, detail, contain, summary, powerful, despite, throughout, entire, enormously, athlete, medal, somehow, indeed
重点 表达	turn to... for, focus on, raise one's voice, calm down, be proud of, take one's advice, jump in with both feet, in the lead, now and then, leave... behind
重点 知识	1. 完全倒装句 2. 动词-ing 形式作主语 3. 主语+be+ <i>adj.</i> +动词不定式
单元 语法	复习时态
单元 写作	有关家庭回忆的记叙文
主题 美文 赏读	<p>Thus, Papa insisted that we learn at least one new thing every day. Though, as children, we thought this was crazy, it would never have occurred to us to deny Papa's requests. We would talk about the news of the day at dinner time, no matter how unimportant, it was never taken lightly. Papa would listen carefully and was ready with some comments, always to the point.</p> <p>因此,爸爸坚持要我们每天至少学一件新事物。虽然,作为孩子,我们认为这是疯狂的,但我们从来没有想过要拒绝爸爸的要求。我们会在晚餐时间谈论当天的新闻——无论多么无关紧要,都不会被忽视。爸爸会仔细听,并准备好一些评论,总是切中要害。</p>

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

## 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. character *n.* (书、剧本、电影等中的)人物,角色
2. approach *v.* 走近,靠近
3. chat *n.* 闲谈,聊天
4. focus *v.* (把……)集中(于)
5. respect *v.* 尊敬,敬重
6. ignore *v.* 忽视,不理
7. professional *adj.* 职业的,专业的
8. suit *v.* 适合
9. talent *n.* 天赋,才能
10. option *n.* 选择,可选择的东西
11. generation *n.* 一代(人)
12. gap *n.* 差距,差别
13. assume *v.* 假定,假设,认为

14. turn to... for 向……寻求/索要……

15. focus on 集中精力于……

16. calm down 镇定下来,平静下来

17. be proud of 以……为骄傲/自豪

18. take one's advice 采纳某人的建议/意见

(二)阅读词汇

1. career *n.* 职业,事业

2. lawyer *n.* 律师

3. studio *n.* (音乐)录音室

4. court *n.* 法院,法庭

5. sigh *n.* 叹气,叹息(尤因厌烦、失望、疲倦等)

6. curtain *n.* (舞台上的)幕,帷幕

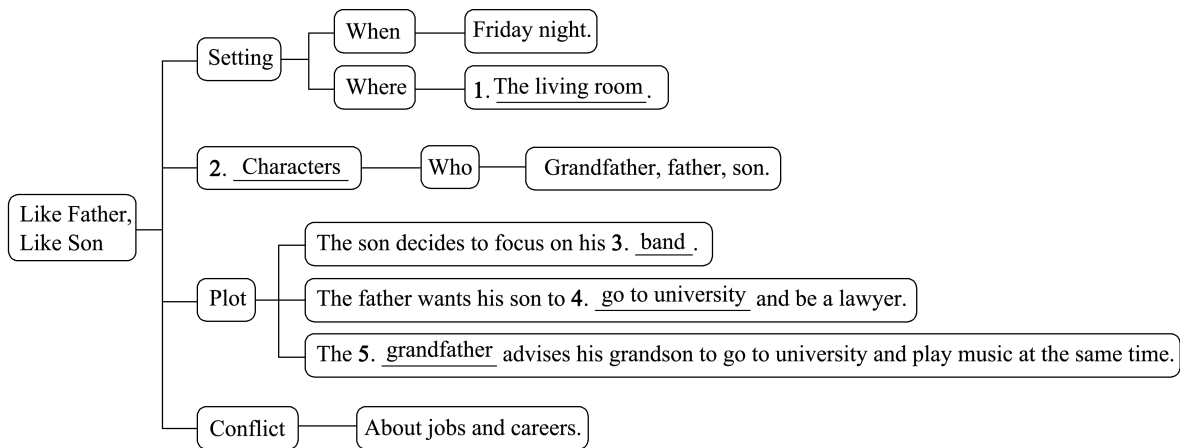
7. jump in with both feet 踊跃参加,全心全意投入

8. play music 音乐创作

## 多维化析文

### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What is the conversation mainly about?  
A. The conflict between Father and Son about the

career.

B. The advice from Grandfather.

C. The talent of Son.

D. The suitable career for Son.

答案:A

2. What did the son want to be?

- A. A lawyer.  
B. A musician.  
C. A soccer player.  
D. An engineer.

答案:B

3. What does the father think of a career as a lawyer?

- A. Famous but tiring.  
B. Important but boring.  
C. Respectable and well-paid.  
D. Demanding and challenging.

答案:C

4. What did the grandfather advise his grandson to do?

- A. To go to university and play music.  
B. To be a professional musician.  
C. To have three opinions.  
D. To ignore adults' advice.

答案:A

5. Which column may the text be taken from?

- A. Entertainment.      B. Employment.  
C. Family.                D. Sports.

答案:C

### ▶ 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

Grandpa and Father 1. are playing (play) chess when Son comes in. Son tells his father that he doesn't want to go to university, 2. which surprises his father. Father is a lawyer, and intends his son to choose the career as well, because it pays well. However, the son is 3. interested (interest) in playing music. Father doesn't understand his son and has an 4. argument (argue) with him. Grandpa has no choice but 5. to calm (calm) both of them down. He reminds Father of his decision when Father 6. was (be) his son's age. At that time, Father chose a career suiting his own talents. Grandpa didn't force Father to follow his will and was even proud 7. of Father. Finally, Grandpa asks Son to take his advice 8. seriously (serious) and suggests that he should go to university and play music at 9. the same time. In his

opinion, Son can make lots of new friends at university. Father accepts it, 10. saying (say), "You can make lots of new lawyer friends."

#### Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. You just assume I want to be a lawyer, but that's only because you are a lawyer.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。but 为并列连词,连接两个并列句;在第一个分句中,I want to be a lawyer 是宾语从句,省略了连接词 that;在第二个分句中,because 引导表语从句。

[尝试翻译]您以为我想当律师,可那只是因为您自己是律师。

2. I remember when you were his age, you said that you wanted to be a professional football player.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。remember 后面是省略了连接词 that 的宾语从句,其中 when 引导时间状语从句,而 that 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]我记得你像他这么大的时候,你说你想成为一名职业足球运动员。

### ▶ 思维品质培养

#### Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Is Son satisfied with the result? Give your opinion. (Answers may vary.)

According to the phrase "with a sigh" in the text, we can know that Son is not quite satisfied with the result.

2. Analyse the root of the problem in the play and try to voice your opinion. (Answers may vary.)

The old and the young in the family usually hold different opinions about the same topic. The generation gap arises. It is obvious that the generation gap is quite common and it is hard to distinguish who is right and who is wrong. The best way to deal with that problem is to communicate with each other face to face. Stating opinions freely with family members will result in the suitable solution. Additionally, narrowing the generation gap with children is essential to each family member of a family.

## 课后素养评价(十一)

## I. 阅读理解

When children do something wrong, parents expect an apology. Children often try to read their parents' mind or butter up (奉承) their parents by saying "I'm sorry". Even though they did not do anything wrong, they would act in that way because they are scared to make their parents angry. Children always look timid (胆小的) because they have been anxious or nervous about being punished by parents.

When parents force them to apologise, they will lose the opportunity to think by themselves why they should apologise or what was wrong. So, how can we make them understand properly what was wrong?

If parents never give children a chance and say something like, "That's not good" or "Say you're sorry", children cannot learn to reflect their behaviour. So, the first thing that parents should do is to listen to their children, asking questions such as what happened, why they did it. Once children have their parents' attention and feel at ease, they can easily accept their parents' words.

Children do not have enough skill to tell good or bad things, therefore, it is necessary for parents to teach them what was wrong. When parents explain what was wrong to children, short and simple words should be used as much as possible. Moreover, it would be more effective to tell children what kind of behaviour makes parents feel a certain way. For example, it would be good to express a mum's feelings with something like "When you hit me, mommy will get hurt." "When you call me stupid, I feel sad."

In this way, children can understand that they hurt their mum or they make her sad, and therefore they will

become able to apologise naturally. That would be more understandable for children why their behaviour was wrong than being scolded by parents something like "Hitting is not good!" "You cannot say stupid to someone else."

Many people believe that children are too young to understand what parents say. However, children actually can understand parents' feelings if parents use simple words and speak calmly. Parents should avoid speaking one-sidedly and always try to listen to children. Talking to each other would be the best way.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了当孩子出现不当行为时,家长应该如何正确引导。

1. Why do children apologise when they don't want to?

- A. They want to show their politeness.
- B. They want to please their parents.
- C. They show regrets for their mistakes.
- D. They want to act like their parents.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Children often try to read their parents' mind or butter up (奉承) their parents by saying 'I'm sorry'. Even though they did not do anything wrong, they would act in that way because they are scared to make their parents angry.”可知,即使孩子没有认识到自己的错误,也会道歉,是因为他们想取悦父母。故选 B。

2. What is important for parents in making children apologise?

- A. Timeliness.
- B. Seriousness.
- C. Patience.
- D. Kindness.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“*So, the first thing that parents should do is to listen to their*



children, asking questions such as what happened, why they did it. Once children have their parents' attention and feel at ease, they can easily accept their parents' words.”可推知,父母的耐心是非常重要的。故选 C。

3. What should parents do when explaining children's wrongdoings?

- A. Speak briefly and clearly.
- B. Teach them the harm seriously.
- C. Do the same thing to children.
- D. Show what other children do.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“When parents explain what was wrong to children, short and simple words should be used as much as possible.”可知,父母在解释孩子的错误行为时应该简洁、明了。故选 A。

4. What's the author's advice in correcting children's bad behaviours?

- A. Trying to let children listen to them.
- B. Communicating with them equally.
- C. Giving them a lesson about behaviours.
- D. Letting them alone because of small age.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Parents should avoid speaking one-sidedly and always try to listen to children. Talking to each other would be the best way.”可推知,作者建议父母平等地与孩子们沟通,以纠正孩子们的不良行为。故选 B。

## II. 七选五

Nowadays parents and their children are spending less and less time communicating with each other. 1 It is reported that American parents today spend about 40 per cent less time with their children than parents did a generation ago. To keep your family time creative and enjoyable, below is a list of helpful family time tips.

### Eat together & listen to each other

Most children today don't know the meaning of a family dinnertime. Yet the communication and unity built during this time is necessary to a healthy

family life. Sharing a meal together allows parents and their children the opportunity to talk about each other's lives. 2

### Read often

It's important for parents to read to their children. The latest research shows that reading to your children develops an interest in knowledge and contributes to language development. It also increases their concentration on things and helps them become more curious. 3 After reading, ask questions about what the books are about.

### Start a hobby or project

Choose a fun activity that your children are interested in. Activities like cooking, fishing or biking can be their great hobbies. 4 Once a child learns a new skill, let him or her take the lead under your direction.

### Plan a family outing

5 Jump into the family car and go for a drive. Prepare a picnic lunch and visit a local park. Take time to play or ride a bike. A slow and relaxing walk in the woods will help parents communicate with their children better. Also, a visit to the zoo or museum will inspire enthusiasm in a child and lead to long discussions.

- A. It is very important for children to exercise.
- B. They can open the door to exciting family time.
- C. Sometimes getting out of the house is important.
- D. Look for books that your children would enjoy reading.
- E. New technology has made video games more popular with children.
- F. This is also a time for parents to listen and give advice to their children.
- G. As a result, many children are getting less love than their parents once got.

答案:1~5 GFDBC

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I often have a **chat** with my friends on the telephone. 聊天
2. My sister is studying law in the university and she will become a **lawyer** in the future. 律师
3. Faulkner has been considered as the greatest American novelist of his **generation**. 一代(人)
4. The girl suffered a terrible pain in her knees, which made it impossible for her to continue her **career** as a tennis player. 职业, 事业
5. “I’m afraid we don’t have enough money to buy it,” **sighed** the mother. 叹息
6. As you **approach** the town, you’ll see the college on the left. 走近
7. A **studio** is a room where radio or television programmes are recorded, CDs are produced, or films are made. (音乐)录音室
8. Before the **curtain** fell, the audience rose to their feet and a storm of applause burst out. (舞台上的)幕, 帷幕
9. These measures are aimed at narrowing the **gap** between the rich and the poor. 差距
10. Four people will appear in **court** today, charged with fraud (欺诈罪). 法院, 法庭

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>assume</u> <i>v.</i> 假定, 假设, 认为	<u>assumption</u> <i>n.</i> 假定, 假设, 认为
<u>respect</u> <i>v. &amp; n.</i> 尊敬, 敬重	<u>respectful</u> <i>adj.</i> 礼貌的; 恭敬的
	<u>respectable</u> <i>adj.</i> 体面的; 令人尊敬的
	<u>respective</u> <i>adj.</i> 分别的, 各自的
<u>ignore</u> <i>v.</i> 忽视, 不理	<u>ignorant</u> <i>adj.</i> 无知的, 愚昧的
	<u>ignorance</u> <i>n.</i> 无知, 愚昧

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>professional</u> <i>adj.</i> 职业的, 专业的	<u>profession</u> <i>n.</i> 行业, 职业
<u>suit</u> <i>v.</i> 适合	<u>suitable</u> <i>adj.</i> 适当的
<u>talent</u> <i>n.</i> 天赋, 才能	<u>talented</u> <i>adj.</i> 有天赋的, 有才能的
<u>option</u> <i>n.</i> 选择, 可选择的东西	<u>optional</u> <i>adj.</i> 可选择的
<u>character</u> <i>n.</i> (书、剧本、电影等中的) 人物, 角色; 个性, 性格; 特点, 特征, 特色; 人格, 品行; 字, 字体; 符号	<u>characteristic</u> <i>adj.</i> 典型的, 独特的 <u>n.</u> 特征, 特色, 特点

III. 补全短语

1. focus on 集中(注意力)于……; 聚焦于……
2. be interested in 对……感兴趣
3. calm down 冷静下来
4. raise one’s voice 提高嗓门
5. be proud of 以……为傲, 对……感到自豪
6. in the end 最终, 最后
7. take one’s advice 采纳某人的建议
8. jump in with both feet 踊跃参加, 全心全意投入
9. at the same time 同时
10. turn to... for 向……寻求/索要……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 完全倒装句  
Oh look, here comes my boy.  
哦, 看呐, 我的孩子来了。
2. 句型公式: because 引导表语从句  
You just assume I want to be a lawyer, but that’s only because you are a lawyer.  
您以为我想当律师, 可那只是因为您自己是律师。
3. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语  
Playing in a band is not a job.  
搞乐队根本不是一份工作。

## 任务型课堂

## 1. approach v. &amp; n. 走近, 靠近

[教材原文] nervously **approaching** the table  
小心翼翼地走近桌子

[归纳拓展]

(1) approach sb./sth. 靠近/接近某人/某物

with... approaching 在……快到的时候

(2) an/the approach to ……的方法/途径

the approach to doing sth. 做某事的方法

at/with the approach of 在快到……的时候

(3) approachable *adj.* 可接近的; 能达到的; 和蔼可亲的, 平易近人的

【易混辨析】way, means, manner, method 和 approach 都有“方法”之意, 但用法、搭配不同

(做)……的方法	用这种方法
way to do/of (doing) sth.	in this way
method of (doing) sth.	with this method
means of (doing) sth.	by this means
approach to (doing) sth.	in this manner

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① All the approaches to the palace were guarded by troops.

② The job market has changed and our approaches to finding (find) work must change as well.

③ At the meeting they discussed three different approaches (approach) to the study of mathematics.

(2) 一句多译

如果你用这种方法做, 你会成功的。

① If you do it in this way, you'll succeed. (way)

② If you do it with this method, you'll succeed. (method)

③ If you do it by this means, you'll succeed. (means)

④ If you do it in this manner, you'll succeed. (manner)

## 2. assume v. 假定, 假设, 认为

[教材原文] You just **assume** I want to be a lawyer, but that's only because you are a lawyer. 您以为我想当律师, 可那只是因为您自己是律师。

[归纳拓展]

(1) assume sb./sth. (to be) + *n./adj.* 假定/假设某人/某物为

It is (generally) assumed that... 人们(普遍)认为……

assume (that)... 认为……, 假设……

(2) assumption *n.* 假定, 假设

make an assumption/assumptions about 对……做出假设

on the assumption that... 在假定……的基础上

(3) assuming *conj.* 假如, 假设……为真

assuming (that)... 假定……

(4) assumed *adj.* 假定的; 假设的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Let's assume his idea about the matter to be (be) right. What should we do to solve it?

② We are working on the assumption (assume) that everyone invited will turn up.

(2) 根据提示补全句子

① A lot of people make an assumption that (对……做出假设) hunger only exists (存在) in that country.

② Assuming that (假定) the house is for sale, would you buy it?

## 3. suit v. 适合

[教材原文] Yes, and you have found the career that **suits** your talents.

是的, 而且你找到了适合你天赋的职业。

[归纳拓展]

(1) suit sb. fine 很合某人的意; 对某人很合适

suit sth. to sth. 使某事物适合于另一事物

(2) suitable *adj.* 适当的; 相配的; 恰当的

be suitable for... 适合于……

be suitable to do sth. 适合做某事



## 课后素养评价(十二)

### I. 单词拼写

1. Absorbed in painting, John didn't notice evening approaching (临近).
2. On no account can we ignore (忽视) the value of knowledge, as well as practical experience.
3. They chatted (闲聊) about the film shown last night.
4. Eight options (选择) were presented for consideration.
5. If it's a legal matter, you need to seek professional (专业的) advice.
6. Mickey Mouse has become one of the popular cartoon characters (人物) known all over the world.
7. It is generally assumed (假设) that stress is caused by too much work.
8. But in my heart, I want to be noticed and show my talent (才能).
9. He was a scientist and was respected (尊敬) by all who knew him for his kindness.
10. I don't think this coat really suits (适合) me.  
Please show me another one.

### II. 短语填空

calm down; focus on; in surprise; in the end; be proud of

1. She looked at the man in surprise and said she did not know him at all.
2. The meeting focused on whether we should build a new teaching building.
3. I have a good reason to be proud of the work done by my father.
4. In the end, the young man arrived home safe and sound.
5. Once you've calmed down, decide how you want to move forward.

### III. 完成句子

1. The fish caught yesterday was still alive.  
昨天捕到的鱼还活着。
2. Here is/stands a tall tree with a history of more

than 500 years.

这里有一棵有 500 多年历史的大树。

3. His coming late to school again made the teacher very angry.  
他上学又迟到了,这使老师很生气。
4. Since you have so many problems, why don't you take my advice or turn to him for help?  
既然你有这么多问题,为什么不采纳我的建议或者向他寻求帮助呢?
5. What about going out with me tomorrow?  
明天和我一起出去怎么样?

### IV. 完形填空

My father brought home a sailboat when I was ten, and almost each Sunday in summer we would go sailing. Dad was quite skilled in sailing, but not good at 1. As for me, I 2 both because of living close to Lake Ontario.

The last time Dad and I set sail together is really 3. It was a perfect weekend after I graduated from university. I came home and 4 Dad to go sailing. Dad hadn't sailed for years, but everything 5 well with the tiller (舵柄) in his hands.

When we were in the middle of the lake, a 6 wind came all of a sudden. The boat was hit 7. Dad was always at his best in any 8, but at this moment he froze (呆住).

"John! 9!" he shouted in a trembling (颤抖的) voice, with the tiller still in his hands.

In my memory he could fix any 10. He was the one I always 11 for strength and security. Before I could respond, a 12 of water got into the boat. I rushed to the tiller but it was too late. Another huge wall of water 13 the boat in a minute. We were thrown into the water, and Dad was struggling aimlessly. At that moment, I eagerly wanted to 14 him.

I swam to Dad quickly and assisted him in climbing onto the hull (船身) of the boat. Upon

sitting on the hull, I comforted him, "It's all right, Dad. We are safe now."

That was the first time Dad had counted on me in a moment of emergency. More importantly, I found it was my turn to start 15 my father.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。在作者的记忆里爸爸无所不能,可是一次难忘的航行却让作者有了新的发现——原来父亲也需要别人的帮助。

1. A. boating                      B. running  
C. swimming                      D. teaching

C 根据下文 "We were thrown into the water, and Dad was struggling aimlessly." 和 "I swam to Dad quickly and assisted him in climbing onto the hull (船身) of the boat." 可知,父亲精通航海术,却不会游泳 (swimming)。

2. A. enjoyed                      B. desired  
C. hated                          D. learnt

D 根据下文可知,作者陪父亲一同去航海,而且还救了落水的父亲。因此作者在很小的时候就学会了 (learnt) 航海和游泳。

3. A. unforgivable                  B. unforgettable  
C. cheerful                      D. regretful

B 作者跟他父亲一起去航行,但却遇到了意外,作者好不容易才救起了落水的父亲,因此这次经历是十分难忘的 (unforgettable)。

4. A. sent                          B. ordered  
C. invited                          D. allowed

C 根据下文 "Dad hadn't sailed for years" 可知,作者很多年没有和父亲一起航行了,因此在大学毕业回家后,邀请 (invited) 父亲一同航行。

5. A. finished                      B. went  
C. pretended                      D. sounded

B 根据上文的 "Dad hadn't sailed for years" 和 "but" 可知,虽然爸爸多年没有航行,但舵柄在他的手中,一切都很顺利。go well 意为 "进展顺利"。

6. A. cold                          B. gentle  
C. strong                          D. hot

C 根据下文 "water got into the boat" 及 "We were thrown into the water" 可知,风很大,把浪卷进船里,最后作者和父亲都掉进水里,风大用 "strong" 符合语境。

7. A. violently                      B. lightly

- C. hardly                          D. deeply

A 根据上文可知,吹起了狂风,所以船被猛烈地 (violently) 撞了一下。

8. A. place                          B. danger  
C. sport                          D. job

B 根据上文的 "Dad was always at his best" 可知,在作者的记忆中,父亲在任何危险 (danger) 中都能处理好一切,但这一次却呆住了。

9. A. Look                          B. Jump  
C. Run                              D. Help

D 根据下文 "he shouted in a trembling (颤抖的) voice" 可知,作者的爸爸很害怕,大喊 "救命 (Help)"。

10. A. relationship                  B. problem  
C. machine                          D. boat

B 根据下文 "for strength and security" 可知,在作者的记忆中,爸爸可以解决任何问题 (problem)。

11. A. argued with                  B. lived with  
C. turned to                          D. objected to

C 根据下文 "for strength and security" 可知,作者相信爸爸能够解决任何问题,所以总是向他寻求 (turn to) 力量和庇护。

12. A. wave                          B. stream  
C. shower                          D. river

A 根据下文的 "of water got into the boat" 可知,作者还没有来得及回答,一个浪 (wave) 就打到了小船上。

13. A. turned over                  B. poured into  
C. got through                      D. lifted up

A 根据下文的 "We were thrown into the water" 可知,作者和爸爸被抛进了水中,因此小船被打翻了 (turned over)。

14. A. criticise                      B. teach  
C. ask                                  D. protect

D 根据下文 "I swam to Dad quickly and assisted him in climbing onto the hull (船身) of the boat." 可知,作者帮父亲摆脱了险境,因此作者在那一刻急切地想要保护 (protect) 父亲。

15. A. making up for                  B. looking after  
C. paying off                          D. getting ready for

B 通过这件事,作者发现父亲也需要帮助,轮到自己去照顾 (looking after) 父亲了。



Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Nowadays** most kids prefer watching TV to reading. 现今, 现时
2. It is important to protect your **skin** when you are outside. 皮肤
3. He keeps up his **jogging** whether it's blowing or snowing. 慢跑锻炼
4. Taking exercise is one way of keeping **slim**. 苗条的, 修长的
5. Her speech made a profound **impact** on me. 作用, 影响
6. The **theme** of the project is "Protecting health from climate change". 主题
7. Taking everything into consideration, the **event** was a great success. 活动
8. There are a number of different points of view on this **issue**. 争论的问题
9. A **range** of activities have been introduced aimed at improving children's health. 一系列

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>currently</u> <i>adv.</i> 现时, 当前	<u>current</u> <i>adj.</i> 当前的, 现行的; 通用的; 流通的; 流行的 <i>n.</i> 水流; 气流; 电流; 思潮; 潮流
<u>regularly</u> <i>adv.</i> 经常	<u>regular</u> <i>adj.</i> 有规律的, 频繁的 <i>n.</i> 常客, 老主顾; 主力 (或正式) 队员
<u>responsible</u> <i>adj.</i> (对事故、错误、罪行等) 负有责任的, 应承担责任的	<u>responsibility</u> <i>n.</i> 责任, 职责; 任务
<u>memory</u> <i>n.</i> 记忆, 回忆	<u>memorise</u> <i>v.</i> 记忆, 记住
	<u>memorable</u> <i>adj.</i> 值得纪念的, 难忘的
<u>nation</u> <i>n.</i> 国家	<u>national</u> <i>adj.</i> 国家的; 民族的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>aim</u> <i>v.</i> 力求达到	<u>aimless</u> <i>adj.</i> 没有方向的, 无目标的, 无计划的
	<u>aimlessly</u> <i>adv.</i> 漫无目的地
<u>observe</u> <i>v.</i> 庆祝, 过 (节日、生日等); 观察; 遵守 (法律、习俗等); 评论	<u>observation</u> <i>n.</i> 观察, 观测; 监视; (尤指据所见、所闻、所读而作的) 评论
	<u>observer</u> <i>n.</i> 观察者; 观察员
<u>apologise</u> <i>v.</i> 道歉	<u>apology</u> <i>n.</i> 道歉
<u>stress</u> <i>n.</i> 重音, 重读 <i>v.</i> 强调, 重视	<u>stressful</u> <i>adj.</i> 充满压力的; 紧张的
	<u>stressed</u> <i>adj.</i> 感到有压力的; 焦虑不安的
<u>strength</u> <i>n.</i> 强烈程度; 力量, 力气	<u>strong</u> <i>adj.</i> 强壮的
	<u>strengthen</u> <i>v.</i> 加强

III. 补全短语

1. in fact 事实上; 实际上
2. even though/if 即使; 尽管
3. in one's forties 在某人四十几岁时
4. kind of 有点儿
5. be related to 与……有关
6. a wide range of 大范围的, 广泛的
7. be busy with sth. 忙于某事
8. be worried about 担心……, 担忧……
9. make up for 弥补, 补偿 (令人不快的遭遇或损失)
10. have a/an... impact on 对……有影响
11. work on 忙于……; 从事于……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: the same as...
- In fact, we stayed at the same campsite as we did ten years ago.
- 事实上, 我们和十年前一样住在同一个营地。
2. 句型公式: 虚拟语气
- I wish she had come!



我真希望她来了!

### 3. 句型公式:不定式作目的状语

To make up for it, next week we plan to go to the

countryside together.

为了弥补这一点,下周我们计划一起去乡下。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. responsible *adj.* (对事故、错误、罪行等)负有责任的,应承担责任的

[教材原文] Who's **responsible**?

谁负责?

[归纳拓展]

(1) be responsible for 对……负责,是……的原因

(2) responsibility *n.* 责任,义务

It's one's responsibility to do sth. 做某事是某人的责任。

have/take/shoulder responsibility for 为……负责  
a sense of responsibility 责任感

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① It's your responsibility to inform (inform) us of any changes.

② Cigarette smoking takes responsibility (responsible) for about 90% of deaths from lung cancer.

③ The storm is thought to be responsible for as many as four deaths.

### 2. aim *v.* 力求达到;力争做到;瞄准;目的是;旨在;针对 *n.* [C]目标;目的 [U]瞄准

[教材原文] It **aims** to deepen people's understanding of issues that are related to families.

它旨在加深人们对与家庭有关的问题的理解。

[归纳拓展]

(1) aim... at... 用……瞄准……;使……针对……

aim at/for... 力求获得……;瞄准……;目标是……

aim at doing sth./aim to do sth. 力争做某事

be aimed at (doing) sth. 旨在(做)某事

with the aim of... 有……目标

achieve one's aim 实现某人的目标

(2) aimless *adj.* 无目的的,无目标的

(3) aimlessly *adv.* 漫无目的地

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① In the newspaper of our school there is a column called "Foreign Cultures" aiming (aim) to introduce foreign customs.

② His life seems aimless (aim): he is just playing about, doing nothing.

③ The police found the boy wandering aimlessly (aim) in the street, not knowing where to go.

④ This is an activity aimed/aiming (aim) at improving the students' ability to listen and speak.

### 3. apologise *v.* 道歉

[教材原文] Act out the conversation to **apologise** to a family member.

表演对话,向家人道歉。

[归纳拓展]

(1) apologise to sb. for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事向某人道歉

(2) apology *n.* 道歉;辩白

make/offer an apology to sb. for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事向某人道歉

accept/refuse one's apology 接受/拒绝某人的道歉

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① You must apologise to her for keeping (keep) her waiting.

② I offered her an apology (apologise), but she wouldn't accept it.

(2) 一句多译

你应该为你的粗心向她道歉。

① You should make an apology to her for your carelessness. (apology)

② You should apologise to her for your carelessness. (apologise)

多义词汇专练

observe

- A. v. 看到;注意到      B. v. 观察      C. v. 遵守      D. v. 庆祝

- ① Though having lived abroad for years, many homesick Chinese still **observe** traditional customs.  
② The scientist devoted most of his lifetime to **observing** the behaviour of the chimps.  
③ Could you tell me how you usually **observe** the Spring Festival?  
④ The thief was **observed** to open the window and run away.

C  
B  
D  
A

语法探究

复习时态

「语法感知」

- ① Grandfather and Father, seated at the table, **are playing** chess.  
② You **know** you can always turn to your dad for a chat.  
③ I've **decided** not to go to university.  
④ I knew you'd **say** that.  
⑤ I **told** you to calm down, both of you!  
⑥ If you go to university and play music at the same time, you **will have** two options for your future.  
⑦ She **had learned** some English before she came to the institute.  
⑧ Jenny **was looking** for a seat when, luckily, a man got up and left.

1. 句①中黑体部分的构成形式为“are+现在分词”，故其时态为“现在进行时”。  
2. 句②中黑体部分的构成形式为“动词原形”，表示一种客观事实，故其时态为“一般现在时”。  
3. 句③中黑体部分的构成形式为“have+过去分词”，表示过去发生的动作一直持续到现在，故其时态为“现在完成时”。  
4. 句④中黑体部分的构成形式为“would+动词原形”，故其时态为“过去将来时”。  
5. 句⑤中黑体部分的构成形式为“动词过去式”，故其时态为“一般过去时”。  
6. 句⑥中黑体部分的构成形式为“will+动词原形”，故其时态为“一般将来时”。  
7. 句⑦中黑体部分的构成形式为“had+过去分词”，表示过去的过去，故其时态为“过去完成时”。  
8. 句⑧中黑体部分的构成形式为“was+现在分词”，故其时态为“过去进行时”。

「语法精讲」

一、理解概念

英语中，不同的时间里以不同方式发生的动作或存在的状态要用动词不同的形式表示出来，动词的这种不同形式构成了动词的时态。一般说来，发生在现在的事情用现在的时态进行描述；发生在过去的事情就用过去的时态进行描述；将要发生的事情用将来的时态进行描述。

二、语法规则

(一)一般时态

1. 一般现在时

(1)构成

一般现在时主要由动词原形构成。动词 be 的第一人称单数形式用 am，第三人称单数形式用 is，其他人称形式均用 are。动词 have 的第三人称单数形式用 has。实义动词的第三人称单数形式的变化规则：

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-s	hate—hates
以 s, x, sh, ch 或 o 结尾的动词加-es	discuss—discusses wash—washes teach—teaches fix—fixes go—goes
以“辅音字母+y”结尾的动词，变 y 为 i 再加-es	carry—carries study—studies

(2)一般现在时的用法

①表示经常发生的、习惯性的、反复出现的动作或状态。常与表示习惯的副词(词组)always, every time, now and then, often, seldom, never,

sometimes, usually, every day/night 等连用。  
He **often goes** to work by bus, and he **takes** a walk with his wife after dinner **every day**.

他经常乘公共汽车去上班,而且每天晚饭后和妻子一块散步。

②按时间表、时刻表、日程表等安排将要发生的动作。只限于 go, arrive, leave, start, stay, return, begin, come 等动词。

Look at the timetable. Hurry up! Flight 4026 **takes** off at 18:20.

看看时间表。快点儿吧! 4026 航班 18:20 起飞。

③用在时间、条件或让步状语从句中表示将来。

If it **is** fine tomorrow, we will go there.

如果明天是晴天,我们就去那里。

2. 一般过去时

(1) 构成

一般过去时由动词的过去式构成。动词的过去式的变化规则:

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-ed	look—looked
以 e 结尾的动词后加-d	hope—hoped like—liked
以“辅音字母+y”结尾的动词,变 y 为 i 再加-ed	study—studied try—tried
以重读闭音节或/r/音节结尾,词尾只有一个辅音字母时,双写词尾的辅音字母再加-ed	stop—stopped prefer—preferred admit—admitted permit—permitted

(2) 一般过去时的用法

表示过去一段时间内经常性或习惯性的动作。常与 often, usually, seldom 等表示频度的副词连用。还可以表示在过去某一时间所发生的动作或存在的状态,与现在没有关系,常与 yesterday, the other day, last week, the day before yesterday 等过去的时间状语连用。

In 1931, Addams **became** the first American woman to win the Nobel Peace Prize.

1931 年,亚当斯成为第一位赢得诺贝尔和平奖的美国女性。

3. 一般将来时

(1) 构成

一般将来时由“shall/will+动词原形”构成。其中 shall 用于第一人称,will 用于各个人称。

(2) 一般将来时的用法

表示现在看来以后要发生的动作或存在的状态,

常与表示将来的时间状语 tomorrow, next year, “in+一段时间”等连用。“will+动词原形”还可以表示说话时临时作出的决定。

—What time is it?

——几点了?

—I have no idea. But just a minute, I **will check** it for you.

——我不知道。稍等,我给你查查。

(3) 其他表示“将来”的结构及用法

①“be going to+动词原形”表示按计划、打算要做某事或根据某种迹象预示着要发生某事。

Look! Dark clouds are gathering. It **is going to rain** soon, I think.

瞧! 乌云正在聚集。我想快要下雨了。

②“be to+动词原形”表示按计划、约定或按职责、义务必须做的事或即将发生的动作。

You **are to hand in** your papers by 10 o'clock.

到 10 点你们得交上试卷。

③“be about to+动词原形”表示正要或即将要做某事,该结构不与表示具体的将来时间状语连用。

Tom **was about to close** the window when his attention was caught by a bird.

汤姆正要关上窗户,就在这时一只鸟引起了他的注意。

名师点拨

如果表示从过去某时看将要发生的动作或存在的状态,要用过去将来时(would/should+动词原形)。该时态主要出现在间接引语中。

I telephoned him yesterday to ask what I **would/should do** next week.

我昨天给他打电话,问他我下周要做什么。

(二) 进行时态

1. 构成

现在进行时由“am/is/are+现在分词”构成;过去进行时由“was/were+现在分词”构成;将来进行时由“will/shall+be+现在分词”构成;现在完成进行时由“have/has+been+现在分词”构成。现在分词的变化规则:

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-ing	ask—asking
以不发音的 e 结尾的动词,去 e 再加-ing	write—writing take—taking face—facing

续表

变化规则	例词
以重读闭音节结尾,且末尾只有一个辅音字母时,双写该辅音字母再加-ing	cut—cutting begin—beginning swim—swimming
以 ie 结尾的动词,变 ie 为 y 再加-ing	lie—lying die—dying

2. 进行时的用法

(1) 现在进行时

①表示说话时正在进行或表示现阶段正在进行的动作,虽然此时此刻该动作不一定正在进行。

—I hear you **are working** in a pub. What's it like?  
——我听说你在酒吧工作。感觉怎么样?

—Well, it's very hard work and I'm always tired, but I don't mind.

——哦,工作很辛苦,我也总是很累,不过我不介意。

②表示按计划或安排即将发生的动作,常用于 go, come, leave, start, arrive, return, work, sleep, stay, have, wear, run out 等动词(词组)。

Food supplies in the flood-stricken area **are running out**. We must act immediately before there's none left.

洪灾区的食物供给快要吃完了。我们必须在食物吃完前马上行动。

(2) 过去进行时

①表示过去某一时刻或某一段时间内正在发生或进行的动作,常与表示过去的时间状语从句以及 at that time, at that moment, at this time yesterday, at ten o'clock yesterday 等连用。

He must have sensed that I **was looking at** him. He suddenly glanced at me and said quietly, "Why are you staring at me like that?"

他一定感觉到了我正在看他。他突然瞥了我一眼,轻声说:“你为什么那样盯着我看?”

②表示过去的两个动作中持续进行的一个,常用在“be doing... when...”结构中。

Jack **was working** in the lab **when** the power cut occurred.

杰克正在实验室里工作,这时突然断电了。

(3) 将来进行时

表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间内正在发生或进行的动作,常与一些标志性的时间状语连用,如 at this time tomorrow, by then, from 1:30 to 4:30 tomorrow 等。

Jane can't attend the meeting at 3 o'clock this afternoon because she **will be teaching** a class at that time.

简不能参加今天下午三点的会议了,因为她那个时间在授课。

(4) 现在完成进行时

①表示发生在过去一直持续到现在的动作,常与延续性动词连用。这个动作可能刚停止,也可能仍继续下去。

She **has been writing** the letter since four o'clock in the afternoon.

从下午四点钟到现在,她一直在写信。

②表示在现在以前的这个阶段重复发生的事情。

He **has been calling** me since 10 minutes ago.

十分钟前他就一直在给我打电话。

③强调动作延续时间长或表达某些感情色彩。

We **have been expecting** to see you for a long time. 我们盼望见到你已经很久了。

名师点拨

某些不能用于进行时的动词同样也不能用于现在完成进行时,只能用于现在完成时,如 see, hear 等表示感官的动词;have, be 等表示状态的动词;like 等表示喜好的动词和 know 等表示思维活动的动词。

(三) 完成时态

1. 构成

现在完成时由“have/has+过去分词”构成;过去完成时由“had+过去分词”构成;将来完成时由“shall/will+have done”构成,第一人称用 shall/will,其他人称都用 will。

2. 用法

(1) 现在完成时的用法

①表示发生在过去的动作或存在的状态到说话时刚刚完成或结束,而对现在仍有影响。常用的时间状语:already, just, yet, never, before, lately, recently, in the last/past few days/years, up to now, till now, so far 等。

He **has already received** three similar invitations this week.

本周他已经收到了三个相似的邀请。

②表示从过去某时开始而延续至今(可能还要延续下去)的动作或状态。常用的时间状语:“since+时间点”;“for+时间段”等。

—I remember you **were** a talented pianist at college. Can you play the piano for me?

——我记得你在大学时是一位极有才华的钢琴师。你能为我弹钢琴吗?

—Sorry, **I haven't played** the piano **for years**.

——抱歉,我好多年没有弹钢琴了。

③在条件和时间状语从句中,用现在完成时表示将来某时间前已完成的动作。

Will you come to my office when you **have finished** your work?

你完成工作后到我办公室来一下,好吗?

(2)过去完成时的用法

①表示在过去某一时间或某一动作之前完成的动作或存在的状态,即过去的过去。句中一般有明确的表示“过去的过去”的时间状语(从句)。

When walking down the street, I came across David, whom I **hadn't seen** for years.

沿街走时,我偶然遇见了戴维,我们已经有好几年没见了。

②表示从过去某一时间开始,一直延续到过去的另一时间的动作或状态,常用的时间状语: before, by then, by that time, by the end of, “by the time+从句”等。

It took me a long time **before** I was able to fully appreciate what they **had done** for me.

很久以后我才能够完全领会到他们为我做的一切。

③表示“愿望、打算”的动词(如 hope, want, expect, think, mean, suppose, plan, intend)用于过去完成时表示过去本打算实现而未实现的希望或计划。

I **had intended** to call on you yesterday, but I had an unexpected visitor.

昨天我本来打算去看你,但是来了一位不速之客。

(3)将来完成时的用法

①表示动作或状态延续到将来某一段时间,常用延续性动词。该时态多与 by, for, before 等时间状语连用。

We **shall have walked** a long way **before** we reach there.

在我们到达那儿之前,我们将要走很长一段路。

②表示动作在将来某一段时间之前已结束,但其影响却持续到那一时间,常用终止性动作。

You **will have reached** Shanghai **by this time tomorrow**.

明天这个时候你应该已经到达上海了。

③在时间和条件状语从句中要用现在完成时代替将来完成时。

I will give my opinion **when I have read** the book through.

我读完这本书后,会给出我的意见。

(4)常使用完成时的句型

①This/It/That is the first/second... time + that sb. has/have done.

This/It/That was the first/second... time + that sb. had done.

这是/那是某人第几次做某事。

②It/This is/was the + 最高级 + 名词 + (that) 定语从句(从句中的谓语用完成时)

③It is/has been + 一段时间 + since sb. did...

It was/had been + 一段时间 + since sb. had done sth.

自从……以来多久了。

④hardly/scarcely... when.../no sooner... than... 一……就……(主句用过去完成时,从句用一般过去时)

**It was the third time (that) he had made** the same mistake.

那是他第三次犯同样的错误了。

**No sooner had I got home than** the rain poured down.

我刚到家,大雨就倾盆而下。

## 「语法冲关」

### I. 单句语法填空

- If it turns (turn) cold again, they'll dive back down. But they will come out again if it is warm.
- He was looking (look) for a house when he saw an advertisement in a newspaper one day.
- To the customers' satisfaction, teas of the same high quality are served (serve) in each shop every day.
- After everything was done (do) and just after he left the barber's, he saw a man in the street with long dirty hair.
- It's said that running regularly is (be) more effective at lengthening life than walking, cycling or swimming.
- Confucius believed knives would remind people of killings and were (be) too violent (暴力的) for use at the table.
- Ice Bucket Challenge (冰桶挑战) is a great success until now, and lots of money has been received (receive).
- By next Thursday, they will have completed (complete) the construction (建造) of the new school.



9. One study in America found that students' grades improved (improve) a little after the school introduced uniforms.

10. —Sorry, I forgot (forget) to buy the book you need for you.

—Never mind. I will buy (buy) it myself after school.

## II. 根据提示补全句子

1. One day I saw an advertisement in a local newspaper. I rang up the company (打电话给公司), and I was given the job immediately.

2. Mother promised she would buy me a bike (她会给我买一辆自行车).

3. When summer comes (夏天到来时), they will invite their students to pick the fresh vegetables!

4. Last summer I went to London for a holiday. I spent just a week (只度过一周的时间) there.

5. This is the first time I have come to Chengdu (我来到成都) and I am truly impressed by the lifestyle of people here.

6. Hearing the strange noise, Tony was scared and began to cry (开始哭泣).

## 课后素养评价(十三)

### I. 词语填空

regularly; theme; currently; be related to; observe; apologise; issue; memory; stress; event

- Can you tell me how the Spring Festival is usually observed in this country?
- We are currently advertising for a new sales manager.
- You misunderstood your brother so I think you should apologise to him.
- The theme of the book is the conflict (冲突) between love and duty.
- For your health, do remember to take the medicine regularly three times a day.
- In the future, pay increases will be related to productivity in our company.
- As he aged, he found that his memory got worse and worse.
- Too much time was spent discussing environmental issues.
- It's advised that we organise more social events.
- Only then did the mother realise the stress his son was under.

### II. 单句语法填空

- Who do you think is responsible (responsibility) for the car accident that happened yesterday?
- Can I help you, Madam?  
—No, thank you. I am waiting (wait) for my order.
- Can I call you back at two o'clock this afternoon?

—I'm sorry, but by then I will be flying (fly) to Beijing. How about five?

4. I have read (read) half of the English novel, and I'll try to finish it at the weekend.

5. —Did you have difficulty finding Ann's house?  
—Not really. She had given (give) us clear directions and we were able to find it easily.

6. There were 120 students whose ages ranged from 10 to 18.

7. The organisation aims to provide (provide) assistance to people in need.

8. He hurried home, never once looking back to see if he was being followed (follow).

9. More efforts will be made (make) in the years ahead to get more progress.

10. Why didn't you tell me about your trouble last week? If you had told (tell) me, I could have helped.

11. There's no doubt that the invention of the computer has an impact on human society.

12. Cycling is good exercise. It strengthens (strong) all the muscles (肌肉) of the body.

### III. 阅读理解

Researchers recently studied 3,000 middle school students. Among them were 618 teenagers with one parent who lived away from home for long periods of time because of work. The researchers wanted to know how the work of these “fly-in, fly-out” parents might influence the health of their children.

A higher percentage (比例) of teenagers who experienced the long work absence of a parent had emotional (情感的) or behavioural problems compared with those whose parents worked more traditional hours. This supports earlier research finding high percentages of emotional problems in teenagers who often returned to an empty house after school or whose parents were seldom at dinner.

Findings also suggest that parents don't have to be home all the time to be present in their children's lives, but it helps to be home at certain times. And the best parental presence for a teenager may sometimes be like a potted (盆栽的) plant. Many parents of teenagers have known this to be true and find ways to be present without trying to start a conversation. One friend of mine quietly does housework each evening in the sitting room where her teenagers watch TV. They enjoy one another's company (陪伴) without the need to talk.

In fact, many years of research suggest that children use their parents as a safe base from which to explore the world. Studies tell us that young children quietly follow their parents' movements from room to room, even while carrying on with their own activities. Perhaps our teens, like babies, feel most at ease when their parents are still around. They don't want to stay away from parents who allow them freedom.

A new school year is at hand, so as parents we could offer our teenagers a "potted flower" as a gift, whose quiet and steady (稳定的) presence will give them a great day.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了一项研究。该研究发现经历父母长时间不在身边的青少年有情绪或行为问题的比例更高。此研究结果表明,父母不必一直待在家里陪伴孩子,但在特定的时间待在家里会有所帮助。因此,作者鼓励父母给青少年提供安静和稳定的陪伴。

1. What did the study find about the 618 teens?
  - A. They had more dinners with their parents.
  - B. They were more prepared to help themselves.
  - C. They were more likely to have trouble with their feelings.
  - D. They showed more dislike for traditional

working hours.

- C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“A higher percentage (比例) of teenagers who experienced the long work absence of a parent had emotional (情感的) or behavioural problems compared with those whose parents worked more traditional hours.”可知,研究发现了这 618 名青少年更有可能在情感上有麻烦。故选 C。

2. What is the author's attitude to her friend's practice?
  - A. She doubts it.
  - B. She supports it.
  - C. She is worried about it.
  - D. She cares little about it.

B 观点态度题。根据第三段中的“One friend of mine... without the need to talk.”和第四段中的“Studies tell us... stay away from parents who allow them freedom.”可推知,作者支持她朋友的做法,孩子们喜欢父母陪伴着自己做事情。故选 B。

3. What does earlier research say about young kids according to Paragraph 4?
  - A. They prefer to play with babies.
  - B. They want more freedom from parents.
  - C. They pay attention to parents' behaviour.
  - D. They show more interest in new activities.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“In fact, many years of research... even while carrying on with their own activities.”可知,关于小孩子的早期研究表明了他们关注父母的行为。故选 C。

4. What is the best title for the text?
  - A. Teens Want Potted Plant Parents
  - B. Your Kids Still Need Conversation
  - C. Quiet Families Raise Healthier Teenagers
  - D. Parents Know Little About Today's Teenagers

A 标题归纳题。根据第二段中的“A higher percentage... those whose parents worked more traditional hours.”和第三段中的“Findings... a potted (盆栽的) plant.”,并结合其他内容可知,经历父母长时间不在身边的青少年有情绪或行为问题的比例更高。因此,父母不必一直待在家里陪伴孩子,但在特定的时间待在家里会有所帮助。由此可知,A 选项“青少年想要盆栽式的父母”最适合作为文章标题。故选 A。



## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. admire *v.* 钦佩, 赞美, 羡慕
2. judge *v.* 认为, 判断
3. settle *v.* 和解, 结束(争论)
4. feature *n.* (报纸或杂志的)特写
5. typically *adv.* 一般, 通常
6. individual *adj.* 独特的, 与众不同的(一般含褒义)
7. style *n.* 风格
8. extra *adj.* 额外的, 另外的
9. detail *n.* 细节, 细微之处
10. contain *v.* 包含, 含有
11. summary *n.* 总结, 概要
12. powerful *adj.* 强有力的, 有影响(感染)力的
13. obviously *adv.* 明显地, 显而易见地
14. athlete *n.* 运动员, 田径运动员
15. medal *n.* 奖牌, 勋章
16. series *n.* 系列比赛

17. despite *prep.* 尽管, 虽然
18. throughout *prep.* 在整个期间, 自始至终
19. entire *adj.* 全部的, 整个的
20. million *num.* 许多, 无数
21. somehow *adv.* 用某种方法, 不知怎的
22. indeed *adv.* 当然, 确实(用于强调陈述或回答)
23. settle for 勉强接受, 将就
24. in the lead 领先
25. now and then 偶尔, 有时
26. leave... behind 不管; 把……落下/留下/落在后面

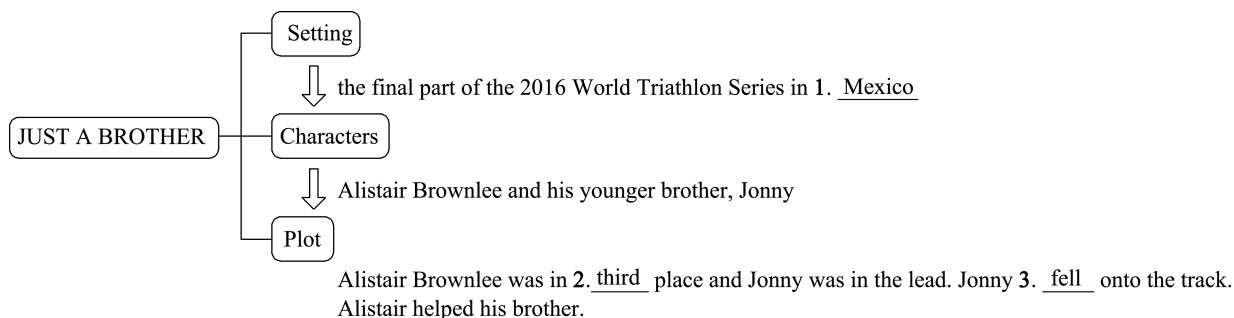
(二)阅读词汇

1. track *n.* 跑道
2. media *n.* 新闻媒体, 传媒
3. triathlon *n.* 铁人三项运动
4. onto *prep.* 到……上, 向……上, 朝……上
5. enormously *adv.* 非常, 极其
6. disqualify *v.* (因犯规而)取消……的资格
7. finish line 终点线

### 多维化析文

#### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



#### 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What can we infer from the text?

A. Alistair was in the lead when his brother was

about to fall.

B. Alistair was younger than his brother.

C. Alistair may have won the race.

D. Alistair thought what he did was wrong.

答案: C

2. Why does Alistair think that having a brother is “an advantage”?

- A. Because he can't leave his brother when they train.
- B. Because he likes arguing with his brother over stupid things.
- C. Because his brother sets him a good example to learn from.
- D. Because his brother can bring him positive force in everything.

答案:D

3. From Alistair's explanation for his decision, what can we know?

- A. Alistair is afraid of his mother.
- B. Alistair really treats himself as a brother.
- C. Alistair's mother loves his brother more than him.
- D. Alistair doesn't like others' opinions on his actions.

答案:B

4. What does the text mainly tell us?

- A. People's different opinions about the Brownlee brothers.
- B. Love and competition are equally important in the match.
- C. The value of brotherly love.
- D. Love is precious.

答案:C

### 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

In the 2016 World Triathlon Series in Mexico, when Alistair came round the corner, he saw his brother Jonny about 1. to fall (fall) onto the track. He ran towards Jonny, caught him and 2. started (start) pulling him towards the finish line. The move put Jonny in second place and Alistair 3. himself (he) in third. It was 4. an unexpected end to the race, but Alistair did not want to discuss it

5. with the media. He just wanted to see his younger brother, 6. who had been rushed to the medical area. Despite 7. arguments (argument) over “stupid things” now and then, Alistair agrees that 8. having (have) a brother is an advantage.

9. Watched (watch) by millions, the ending to the race has divided opinions: should the brothers have been disqualified or 10. highly (high) praised for their actions? But for Alistair, his decision was easy to explain. At that moment, he was no longer an athlete aiming for a medal—he was just a brother.

#### Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Alistair pushed himself towards the finish line in the burning heat, but as he came round the corner, he saw his brother about to fall onto the track.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。but 前的第一个分句为简单句;but 后的第二个分句为主从复合句, as he came round the corner 为 as 引导的时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译]阿利斯泰尔在酷热中奋力奔向终点。但就在他转过弯道时,却看到弟弟即将摔倒在跑道上。

2. Alistair says that they encourage each other as much as they can when they train.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。主句为主谓宾结构, that 引导宾语从句;when 引导时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译]阿利斯泰尔称,他们在训练时尽可能互相鼓励对方。

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 5: Think and answer the following question

How many opinions were there when the match ended and what are they?

Two divided opinions. One is that the brothers should be disqualified, and the other is that the brothers should be highly praised.

## 课后素养评价(十四)

### I. 单词拼写

1. They produced two reports, neither of which contained (包含) any useful suggestions.
2. During your working day what kind of work might you typically (通常) do?
3. The first paragraph should give a brief summary (总结) of the paper.
4. His speech is so powerful (强有力的) that all the people present are deeply moved.
5. When he lost his job, his entire (全部的) world was turned upside down.
6. Obviously (显而易见地) the boy is interested in music as well as in painting.
7. For further details (细节) about the course, please call the following number.
8. It will take a few more years to judge (判断) the impact of these ideas.
9. I don't agree with her, but I admire (钦佩) her for sticking to her principles.
10. If you want to improve your situation, you must adopt a positive (积极的) attitude.
11. The second part introduces the individual (独特的) feature of Debussy's music.
12. Despite (尽管) her problems, she carried on working as usual.
13. The little girl sat next to her mother throughout (在整个期间) the meal.
14. He could have finished it on schedule, but somehow (不知怎的) he fell behind.
15. The direct costs of such packages are indeed (确实) large.

### II. 短语填空

a series of; settle for; now and then; end up; in the lead

1. If he carries on driving like that, he'll end up in prison.
2. Now that I am in the lead, I believe I can win this race!
3. The government has taken a series of measures to improve the air quality.
4. The road is so narrow that there are bound to be traffic jams now and then.

5. He had to settle for a low-paid job because he needed a job very much.

### III. 完成句子

1. The young woman, with a baby sleeping in her arms, was wandering in the street.  
那位年轻的女士,抱着一个熟睡的婴儿,漫步在大街上。
2. Even though/if we completely differ from each other in character, we are still great friends.  
虽然我们在性格上完全不同,但是我们仍然是很要好的朋友。
3. We cannot wait to see them!  
我们迫不及待地想要见到他们!
4. I was about to hand in the paper when I found another mistake and then corrected it carefully.  
我正要交卷,这时我发现了另一个错误,然后仔细地改正了它。
5. We'd better leave things as they are until the police arrive.  
在警察到来之前,我们最好什么也别动。

### IV. 七选五

The clothes you wear. The food you eat. The colour of your bedroom walls. Where you go and how you get there. The people you hang around with. What time you go to bed. What do these things have in common? You're asking. 1

As a kid, you didn't have a say in everything; your parents made decisions about everything from the cereal you ate in the morning to the pajamas you wore at night. 2 Kids need this kind of protection on their own.

But finally, kids grow up and become teens. And part of being a teen is developing your own identity—one that is separated from your parents'. But as you change and grow into this new person who makes your own decisions, your parents have a difficult time adjusting.

3 And issues like the type of friends you have or your attitudes to partying can cause bigger argument, because your parents still always want to protect you and keep you safe, no matter how old you are.

The good news is that in many families the arguing will lessen as their parents get more comfortable with the idea that their teens have a right to certain opinions. It can take several years for parents and teens to adjust to their new role, though. 4

Sometimes this can feel impossible—like they just don't see your point of view and never will. But talking and expressing your opinions can help you gain more respect from your parents. Keep in mind, too, that your parents were teens once. 5  
A. And it's a good thing, too.

- B. Meanwhile focus on communicating with your parents.  
C. So, in most cases, they can relate to what you are going through.  
D. So don't be shy to share these annoying problems with your parents.  
E. In many families, this adjustment can cause a lot of fighting between teens and parents.  
F. There are always arguments about various things between you and your parents in daily life.  
G. They're just a few examples of many hundreds of things that your parents controlled for you.

答案:1~5 GAEBG

# Section V    Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

## 自主式预习

- I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
1. I always have some **extra** cash with me for emergencies. 额外的,另外的  
2. She is the first Chinese player to win the gold **medal** at the Olympic Games. 奖牌,勋章  
3. Look at the students who are running on the **track**. 跑道  
4. The **media** play a major role in influencing people's opinions. 新闻媒体,传媒  
5. She was good at physics **despite** the fact that she found it boring. 尽管  
6. She was **disqualified** after failing a drug test. (因犯规而)取消……的资格  
7. He has his own **individual** method of organising his work. 独特的,与众不同的  
8. *The Sunday Times* is running a long **feature** on the football match. (报纸或杂志的)特写  
9. His **style** of painting has been imitated (模仿) by other artists. 风格  
10. A **summary** is a short statement that gives the main information about something, without giving all the details. 总结,概要  
11. The two teams finished level on points at the end of the **series**. 系列比赛

12. There was a strained atmosphere (紧张气氛) **throughout** the meeting. 在整个期间,自始至终  
II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>admire</u> v. 钦佩,赞美,羡慕	admiration n. 钦佩,赞美,羡慕
	admirable adj. 可钦佩的,值得赞赏的,令人羡慕的
<u>judge</u> v. 认为,判断 n. 法官,裁判员	judgement n. 判断力,识别力;判决,裁决
<u>settle</u> v. 和解,结束(争论);解决;定居	settler n. 定居者
	settled adj. 稳定的,固定的;定居的
<u>detail</u> n. 细节,细微之处	detailed adj. 详细的;细致的;精细的
<u>contain</u> v. 包含,含有	container n. 容器,集装箱,货柜
<u>powerful</u> adj. 强有力的,有影响(感染)力的	power n. 力量;权力
	powerfully adv. 有力地;强大地;强烈地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
positive <i>adj.</i> 好的, 积极的	positively <i>adv.</i> 积极地, 肯定地; 明确地
	(反) negative <i>adj.</i> 消极的, 负面的
athlete <i>n.</i> 运动员, 田径运动员	athletic <i>adj.</i> 运动的
	athletics <i>n.</i> 体育运动

III. 补全短语

- 1. settle for 勉强接受, 将就
- 2. in the lead 领先
- 3. now and then 偶尔, 有时
- 4. leave... behind 把……剩下, 把……落下
- 5. at that moment 在那时
- 6. no longer 不再
- 7. throw away 扔掉
- 8. end up doing sth. 以做某事结束
- 9. meet up (朋友)碰头, 相聚
- 10. pick up 捡起; (开车)接人; 偶然学会; 继续; 振作精神

IV. 重点句式补全

- 1. 句型公式: with 复合结构  
With just 700 metres to go, Alistair Brownlee was in third place and his younger brother, Jonny, was in the lead.  
离终点只有 700 米了, 阿利斯泰尔·布朗利名列第三, 他的弟弟乔尼领先。
- 2. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语  
Watched by millions, the ending to the race has divided opinions: should the brothers have been disqualified or highly praised for their actions?  
数百万人观看了这场比赛, 对于比赛的结果也是众说纷纭: 兄弟二人是应该因他们的行为被取消比赛资格, 还是应该受到高度赞扬?
- 3. 句型公式: 主语 + be + *adj.* + 动词不定式  
But for Alistair, his decision was easy to explain.  
但对于阿利斯泰尔来说, 他的决定很容易解释。
- 4. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作定语  
At that moment, he was no longer an athlete aiming for a medal—he was just a brother.  
在那一刻, 他不再是一名想赢得奖牌的运动员——他只是一位兄长。

任务型课堂

1. admire *v.* 钦佩, 赞美, 羡慕

- (1) admire sb. for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事羡慕/钦佩某人
- (2) admiration *n.* 钦佩, 赞美, 羡慕  
have/express admiration for 对……/表达对……的钦佩
- (3) admirable *adj.* 可钦佩的, 值得赞赏的, 令人羡慕的

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① The boy was admired by his classmates for his bravery in the earthquake.
- ② I'd like to express my admiration (admire) for the courage and uncomplaining spirit of the firefighters (消防员).
- ③ He has made admirable (admire) achievements in medical research.

2. judge *v.* 认为, 判断 *n.* 裁判员, 评委; 法官

[归纳拓展]

- (1) judge... from/by... 从……来判断……

- as far as I can judge 据我判断; 我认为
  - (2) judging by/from 从……来看; 根据……判断 (在句中作状语)
  - (3) judgement *n.* 判决; 判断力; 评价  
in one's judgement 在某人看来
- [即学即练]

- (1) 写出下列句中 judge 的词性和含义
- ① The **judges** had different ideas about the results, so it was two hours before the results were declared. *n.* 裁判员, 评委
- ② The **judge** sentenced him to five years in prison. *n.* 法官
- ③ It will take a few more years to **judge** the impact of these ideas. *v.* 判断

(2) 单句语法填空

- ① Judging (judge) by what he said, I think it's very unlikely that he'll be able to support your application.
- ② In my judgement (judge), it's still hard for him to get a job in the company.

## 3. settle v. 和解, 结束(争论); 定居

## [归纳拓展]

(1) settle in 在……安家, 定居, 落户

settle into 迁入(新居)

settle down 定居, 安顿下来; 平静下来; 集中精力做; 开始认真做

settle on 选择; 选定

settle for 勉强接受, 将就

(2) settler n. 移民; 定居者

(3) settlement n. (解决纷争的) 协议; 解决; 处理; (关于钱财转让的) 协议(书)

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① After the excitement I tried to settle myself down.② With a lot of difficult problems to settle (settle), the newly-elected president is having a hard time.

(2) 完成句子

He found it hard to settle down to work.

他发现很难平静下来工作。

## 4. 主语 + be + adj. + 动词不定式

[教材原文] But for Alistair, **his decision was easy to explain**: "Mum wouldn't have been happy if I'd left Jonny behind."

但对于阿利斯泰尔来说, 他的决定很容易解释: "如果我把乔尼留下, 妈妈肯定会不高兴的。"

[句式分析] 本句中 his decision was easy to explain 为“主语 + be + adj. + 动词不定式”结构。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) 常用于该句型的形容词多为表示主语性质、特征 的词, 如 hard, difficult, pleasant, easy, comfortable, interesting 等;

(2) 动词不定式和主语在逻辑上为动宾关系, 不定式用主动形式表示被动意义; 当不定式中的动词为不及物动词时, 要加上适当的介词;

(3) 不定式有时会带上自己的逻辑主语, 并由 for 引出;

(4) 表示喜、怒、哀、乐等情感的形容词, 后跟不定式表原因, 不可用不定式的主动形式表示被动意义。

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① This machine is very easy to operate (operate). Anybody can learn to use it within a few minutes.② The armchair looks rather hard, but it is very comfortable to sit (sit) in.③ There is a party tonight in honour of our new president, and I am honoured to be invited (invite).

(2) 句型转换

I find it difficult to work out this problem in such a short time.

→ The problem is difficult for me to work out in such a short time.

## 多义词汇专练

When talking about his son, the father could hardly **contain** his pride in him.

A

A. v. 抑制; 控制

B. v. 包含

C. v. 容纳

## 写作探究

## 有关家庭回忆的记叙文

## 「写作指导」

本单元的写作任务是写一篇有关家庭回忆的叙事类记叙文。该类作文以叙述事件为主, 通过完整的故事情节和生动形象的语言, 使读者在享受故事情节的同时有所感悟。

在写叙事性记叙文时要注意以下几个方面:

1. 四定: 定内容——确定叙述要点; 定关键词——确定所用词、词组; 定人称——第一人称还是第三人

称; 定时态——一般过去时、一般现在时还是一般将来时。

2. 三步骤: (1) 开头 (The beginning)——交代必要的背景, 如时间、地点、人物等。(2) 主体 (The body)——交代故事情节 (事情的主体), 如事件的发生、发展和前因后果 (可以使用表示时间或空间的连接词, 使文章连贯, 如 at first...; then...; few minutes later... )。(3) 结尾 (The ending)——事情的结果或感想、愿望等。所表达的感想或愿望应



与所记叙的内容有关系,起到扣题或点题作用,使文章结构紧凑。好的结尾往往不仅有完美的结局,还能令人深思、回味。

3. 叙述方式:可根据不同情况采用顺叙、倒叙或插叙等方式。

「典题示例」

上周五是你的生日,父亲送你一份生日礼物。下面是对这份特殊礼物的描述。请你以“Father’s Gift for My Birthday”为题,用英语讲述这个故事。要点如下:

- 1. 上周五早晨,父亲带我去了一所乡村学校;
- 2. 唯一的教室里有 21 个学生,教室小而昏暗(dim);
- 3. 虽然那里的条件很差,但学生学习很努力;
- 4. 你的感想:原来这就是父亲给我的特殊的生日礼物……

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;  
2. 除要求的内容外,可酌情自由发挥。

Father’s Gift for My Birthday

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 交代事件的缘由 2. 具体描述事件的经过 3. 抒发自己的感想或表明自己的态度

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①Last Friday morning, my father brought me to a village school (带我去了一所乡村学校) in his hometown.
- ②The school had just one classroom, and the classroom was not only small but also dim (不仅小而且昏暗).
- ③All the desks and chairs were made of (由……制成) rough boards.
- ④There were only 21 students and they were listening to the teacher attentively (正专心地听老师讲课).
- ⑤Although their study conditions were poor, all the students studied very hard (学习很用功).
- ⑥I was deeply struck by (被……深深地打动了) their stories.
- ⑦I did not realise that it was my father’s special

birthday gift for me (我父亲送给我的特殊的生日礼物) until then.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①将 Step 2 中句②升级为含有定语从句的句子。  
The school had just one classroom which was not only small but also dim.
- ②将 Step 2 中句④升级为含有定语从句的句子。  
There were only 21 students who were listening to the teacher attentively.
- ③将 Step 2 中句⑦升级为 not until 置于句首引起的部分倒装句。  
Not until then did I realise that it was my father’s special birthday gift for me.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Father’s Gift for My Birthday

My birthday of this year fell on last Friday. My father gave me a special gift.  
Last Friday morning, my father brought me to a village school in his hometown. The school had just one classroom which was not only small but also dim. All the desks and chairs were made of rough boards. There were only 21 students who were listening to the teacher attentively. Although their study conditions were poor, all the students studied very hard.  
I was deeply struck by their stories. Not until then did I realise that it was my father’s special birthday gift for me.

「学以致用」

党的二十大报告强调,弘扬中华传统美德,加强家庭家教家风建设。假设你是李华,请你用英语谈一谈自己和家人庆祝春节的经过。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;  
2. 开头已给出,但不计入总词数。

参考词汇:对联 couplet; 春节联欢晚会 the Spring Festival Gala

参考范文:

I like the Spring Festival because all the family members will get together and have fun with each other.  
Several days before the Spring Festival, we had a thorough cleaning of our house and put up new couplets on our doors, hoping for good luck in the coming year. Then we went shopping and bought a



lot of food. On the eve of the Spring Festival, all my family had a big feast together and then watched the Spring Festival Gala, chatting and laughing. We can receive lucky money from our parents and the

elders.

In the following days, we went to visit our neighbours and relatives and gave them our best wishes.

## 课后素养评价(十五)

### I. 单句语法填空

- Do you know the boy who/that is standing over there?
- I tried to speak to him, but he made off in a hurry.
- Due to his efforts, he made more than three million (million) yuan last year.
- Obviously (obvious), the nice girl was taken in by what the young man said.
- Tickets for such events will typically (typical) cost around thirty dollars.
- It's believed that the media has a powerful (power) influence on public opinion.
- He gave a detailed (detail) description of what happened last night.
- I have always had the greatest admiration (admire) for the famous scientist.
- Judging (judge) from his worried face, we knew that he must have had some trouble.
- When we went to 3 : 1, we should have settled for that.
- Many of us may be eating food containing (contain) GM ingredients without realising it.
- The theory which is based on a series of wrong assumptions is wrong.
- As babies, we depend entirely (entire) on others for food.
- Thinking positively (positive) is one way of dealing with stress.
- The hotel located in the center of the town has 100 individually (individual) designed bedrooms.
- Our team was in the lead at half time.
- When the other kids were taken to the zoo, he was left behind.

### II. 补全句子

- 因为淋了一场大雨,所以他全身湿透了。(过去分词短语作状语)  
Caught in a heavy rain, he was all wet.

- 一天,我正要去买东西时,他打电话找我。(be about to do... when...)  
One day, I was about to go shopping when he telephoned me.

- 老人修车修了三十年了。(现在完成进行时)  
The old man has been repairing cars for thirty years.

- 这篇文章很容易理解。(主语+be+adj.+不定式)  
The passage is easy to understand.

- 想要去徒步旅行的学生要在这里签名。(现在分词短语作定语)  
Students wishing to go hiking should sign their names here.

### III. 语法填空

Every family member has a role to play. Parents and other adults are responsible for ensuring that the basic needs of the family **1. are met** (meet). Their jobs also include teaching and practising good health habits. They have a responsibility to model good communication **2. and** other health skills. They also should encourage young people in the family **3. to practise** (practise) these skills.

Not all responsibilities in the family fall on parents and other adults. Children have special jobs, too. In many **4. families** (family), for example, children share the household chores. Another way to contribute to the **5. warmth** (warm) and happiness of your family is by showing appreciation. To appreciate **6. means** (mean) valuing someone or something. Saying "thank you" to the person **7. who/that** cooks dinner, for example, is a good way to do that. You could also help prepare the dishes, carry groceries, or **8. voluntarily** (voluntary) do other tasks. As a teen, your role may also include helping other family members. You may help your grandparents when they have trouble **9. getting** (get) around, or help a brother or sister **10. with** homework. However you

choose to help, it's important to realise that your support helps make your family healthy.

#### IV. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华, 你的英国笔友 Alex 发来邮件, 提到他总是因为缺乏耐心而和家人争吵, 这让他感到非常苦恼。请你根据所给提示, 用英语给他回封邮件, 内容包括:

1. 表示理解;
2. 提出建议。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 使行文连贯。

参考范文:

Dear Alex,

I understand how upset you must be feeling and I'd like to give you some advice.

When you start to feel impatient, you can take a few deep breaths or leave the room for a while before doing or saying anything. That can help you regain control of yourself and calm down and think clearly. Besides, getting enough sleep at night, eating healthy meals and getting plenty of exercise can also help people feel relaxed and peaceful throughout the day. You can have a try.

I hope my advice will be helpful to you.

Yours,

Li Hua

##### 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I live in a city where jobs are difficult to get and if you want to find a well-paid job, it will be even harder. Therefore, it is not surprising for you to see many people in our city walk a long way because they can't even afford an old used car.

It was a cold windy day. I saw one of these people who often have to walk from and to work every day, when I was driving after work. A middle-aged man wearing only a thin overcoat was walking down the road and trying to ask for a ride from the passing cars. Unluckily, there was no driver willing to stop their cars. When I saw two cars in front of me pass him by, I wanted to do the same. But the

sight of that poor man remained in my mind for quite a moment. I felt as if a big hand was dragging me and forcing me not to leave. Finally I drew back and gave him a ride.

As I drove along, we had a conversation, during which he told me something about himself and his family. I learnt that the man was doing everything he could to support his family using the limited salary from several part-time jobs. As you could imagine, every coin he earned was going to be used to pay for the house and food.

It was a long drive before we got to his home. All the way, I could feel his hardship and tiredness. But as we came close to the house where he was living, I saw his tired eyes grow bright and the whole body was lit up. His lovely girl was playing in the front yard. Seeing her father was out of the car, she ran to him as quickly as possible, reaching out her two small hands. He held the girl with his two strong hands, laughing and kissing her cheeks. I was lost in that happy moment. I smiled, said goodbye to them, wished them the future happiness and then drove off.

注意: 续写词数应为 150 左右。

参考范文:

On my way home, something came into my mind. I thought of my lovely daughter and my happy family. Usually, as a manager of a small firm, I was so busy that I had broken many promises to have dinner with my family. Even I had never seen my honey girl for ten days. Because every night when I got home, she had fallen asleep and the next morning when I left, she was still in her dream. I felt quite sorry for everything I had done before.

Half an hour later, I got home. My daughter was shocked to see me go home so early. But quickly a big smile spread on her face. She put down her toy, flew to me and hugged me tightly. "Dad, am I dreaming?" She asked. "Of course not," I told her what had happened today and promised to spend more time with her and her mum as they are the most valuable treasures in the world to me.

## 读后续写技能养成

## 人物描写之性格描写

## 「技能概述」

1. 性格描写:是指对人的神态和态度的描写。人物性格是指人的态度和行为方式中较为稳定的心理特征,它是人经常性、习惯化的态度和行为方式。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,要根据人物的性别和年龄等特征写出人物的个性,尽可能多地使用反映人物的内外品质的形容词或名词来刻画人物形象。

## 「范例体悟」

Though faced with the most challenging event of my life, I'm full of courage and confidence. With the generous help of my teachers, friends and classmates, I have made huge progress in study.

找出文中描写人物性格的词汇并写下来。

full of courage and confidence; generous

## 「词句储备」

## I. 好词积累

1. shy *adj.* 害羞的
2. kind *adj.* 善良的
3. mean *adj.* 吝啬的
4. active *adj.* 活泼的
5. honest *adj.* 诚实的
6. friendly *adj.* 友好的
7. outgoing *adj.* 外向的
8. easy-going *adj.* 随和的
9. generous *adj.* 慷慨的
10. devoted *adj.* 忠诚的
11. creative *adj.* 有创造力的
12. committed *adj.* 尽心尽力的
13. humorous *adj.* 幽默的
14. promising *adj.* 有前途的
15. determined *adj.* 坚定的
16. ambitious *adj.* 志向远大的
17. hard-working *adj.* 勤劳的
18. warm-hearted *adj.* 热心肠的
19. good-tempered *adj.* 脾气好的
20. strong-willed *adj.* 意志坚强的

## II. 佳句背诵

1. My mother is a hot-tempered person.  
我妈妈是一个脾气火爆的人。
2. He is adaptable, flexible, and a good company.  
他适应力强、办事灵活,是一个好伙伴。
3. He is outgoing in character and a man with a real

sense of commitment to almost everything.

他性格外向,又是一个对几乎一切有着奉献精神的人。

4. Tom is a humorous man who often cuts a joke in the middle of the conversation.  
汤姆是个幽默的人,经常在谈话中加入玩笑。
5. John is an adventurous man, never afraid of danger.  
约翰是个爱冒险的人,从不惧怕危险。
6. I am patient and logical and I will not jump to conclusions quickly.  
我有耐心,逻辑性强,不会急于下结论。
7. This is my best classmate, a warm and kind little boy!  
这就是我最好的同学,一个热情而又善良的小男孩!
8. He is really an optimistic character, worthy of our study.  
他真是一位性格乐观、值得我们学习的人。

## 「技能达标」

## I. 完成句子

1. He is frank and outspoken and never beats about the bush.  
他为人坦率且直言不讳,从不转弯抹角。
2. He is an ambitious young man full of enthusiasm and vitality.  
他是个充满热情与活力且有着远大抱负的青年。
3. My grandfather is in his seventies now. He is a kind and warm-hearted old man.  
我爷爷现在 70 多岁了,他是一位和蔼、热心的老人。
4. Alex, who is from Sheridan High School, is a friendly and generous person and he is always more concerned about others than himself.  
亚历克斯来自谢里丹高中,他友好、慷慨,他总是关心别人胜过关心自己。

## II. 用人物性格描写完成下面的语段

Mrs Peterson is my tenth-grade biology teacher, a cool woman in her late twenties. She has taught us for several months. She 1. is an easy-going and nice teacher (是一个随和、善良的老师) that 2. loves to walk into our hearts (喜欢走进我们的内心) and 3. often cares about us (经常关心我们). And she has a wonderful way of 4. making the most boring lessons fun (让最枯燥无味的课变得有趣味). All of these make her popular with all of us students.

Unit 4 Friends forever

主题语境

人与社会——良好的人际关系与社会交往

必背 单词	familiar, adventure, prefer, click, deliver, advance, significantly, maintain, wi-fi, digital, enable, unusual, site, tend, update, saying, acquire, goods, prove, illustrate, diagram, inspiring, teenager, pour, comfort, patience, passion, quality, anxious, postpone, distance, ordinary, drag, correspond, appointed, strike, plain, scene, bitterly, ashamed, unfold, location, surroundings, personality
重点 表达	lose track of, thanks to, be up to, stay in touch with, keep in mind, throw the baby out with the bathwater, make one's fortune, ought to do, turn up, work out, hear from, be worth it
重点 知识	1. “疑问词+ever”引导让步状语从句 2. “have sth. done”结构
单元 语法	关系代词引导的定语从句
单元 写作	续写故事
主题 美文 赏读	<p>Online communication can actually bring people closer to each other. Nowadays, your friends are just a click away. Whenever someone needs help, friends from all over the world can immediately provide useful suggestions or information. This makes friends feel loved and cared for. To me, this is a very thought-provoking argument, as it points out the benefits of online friendships. As Eileen Kennedy-Moore, an authority on the subject, points out, online friends “fill holes real-life friends can’t”.</p> <p>在线交流实际上可以拉近人与人之间的距离。如今,(联系)你的朋友只需点击一下鼠标。每当有人需要帮助时,来自世界各地的朋友可以立即提供有用的建议或信息。这会让朋友感到被爱和被关心。对我来说,这是一个非常发人深省的论点,因为它指出了在线友谊的好处。正如这方面的权威艾琳·肯尼迪-摩尔所指出的那样,网上的朋友“填补了现实生活中的朋友无法填补的空白”。</p>

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

## 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. forever *adv.* 永远
2. familiar *adj.* 熟悉的
3. adventure *n.* 历险(经历), 奇遇
4. prefer *v.* 更喜欢
5. deliver *v.* 递送, 传送
6. advance *n.* 进步, 进展
7. significantly *adv.* 重大地, 显著地
8. maintain *v.* 保持, 维持
9. acquire *v.* 获得, 得到
10. digital *adj.* 数字的, 数码的
11. enable *v.* 使可能, 使发生
12. unusual *adj.* 异常的, 不平常的
13. tend *v.* 易于做某事, 往往会发生某事
14. goods *n.* 商品
15. prove *v.* 证明, 证实
16. lose track of 不了解……的情况, 不了解……的动态

17. thanks to 归功于……, 多亏……

18. stay in touch with 与……保持联系

19. be up to 忙于; 由……决定; 是……的责任; 胜任

20. connect... with... 使……与……连接; 把……与……联系起来

21. keep in mind 记住, 牢记

(二)阅读词汇

1. click *v.* 点击(鼠标)

2. wi-fi *n.* 无线网络, 无线上网

3. site *n.* 网站

4. update *n.* 最新消息

5. saying *n.* 格言, 谚语, 警句

6. criminal *n.* 罪犯

7. illustrate *v.* (举例)说明, 阐明

8. diagram *n.* 图解, 示意图

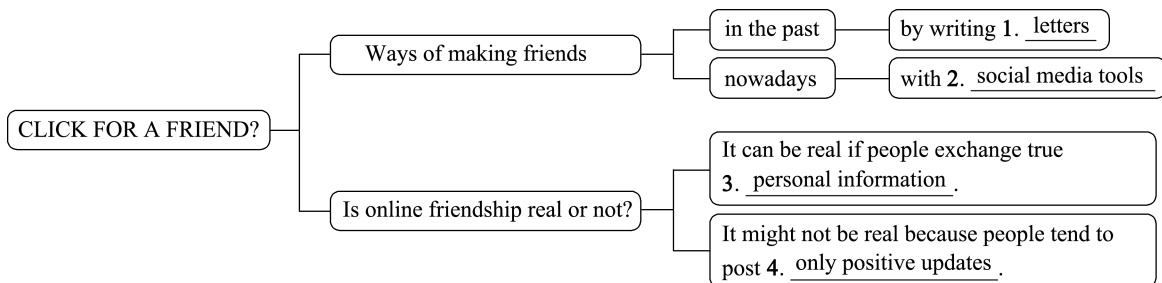
9. throw the baby out with the bathwater  
不分良莠一起抛弃

10. social media 社交媒体

## 多维化析文

### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. The title “CLICK FOR A FRIEND?” means “\_\_\_\_\_”.
- A. Is it necessary to find a friend online?

B. Is it possible to find a real friend online?

C. Is it easy to find a real friend online?

D. Is it more popular to find a friend online now than before?

答案: B

2. Which of the following plays a more important part in maintaining our friendship in modern society?

- A. Writing letters.
- B. Social media tools.
- C. Collecting model cars.
- D. Playing an unusual instrument.

答案:B

3. What does “they” in the last sentence of Paragraph 3 refer to?
- A. People moving to a new town.
  - B. People living on the other side of the world.
  - C. People sharing the same hobbies with us.
  - D. People moving around the world.

答案:C

4. What is the main idea of the text?
- A. It is dangerous to make friends online.
  - B. Making friends online is the best way to make friends.
  - C. Making friends online is much easier than in traditional ways.
  - D. There are advantages and disadvantages of making friends online.

答案:D

### ▶ 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

How would you feel if moving to a new town meant **1. losing** (lose) track of your friends? What if the only way of getting news from faraway friends was writing letters that took **2. ages** (age) to be delivered? Thanks to advances in technology, how we make friends and communicate with them has changed **3. significantly** (significant).

The digital age **4. enables** (enable) us to find people who share our interests, such as collecting model cars or playing an unusual instrument. Whatever our hobbies, the Internet can connect us with others **5. who** also enjoy doing them, even if they live on **6. the** other side of the world.

On social media sites, people tend **7. to post** (post) only positive updates that make them appear happy and **8. friendly** (friend). But smiling photos can hide real problems. Remember the saying: on the Internet, nobody knows you're a dog. A young person could be old; a woman could be a man; we could even

be sharing our information **9. with** criminals.

But this doesn't mean that we should throw the baby out with the bathwater. Although technology has changed the way we acquire friends, the **10. meaning** (mean) of friendship and our longing for friends remain the same. As Aristotle said, no one would choose to live without friends, even if he had all other goods.

#### Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Whatever our hobbies, the Internet can connect us with others who also enjoy doing them, even if they live on the other side of the world.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。Whatever 引导让步状语从句,相当于 No matter what...,这是一个省略句,完整句子为 Whatever our hobbies are;主句中 who 引导定语从句;even if 引导让步状语从句。

[尝试翻译]不管我们的爱好是什么,互联网都能把我们和其他喜欢做这些事情的人联系起来,即使他们生活在世界的另一端。

2. As Aristotle said, no one would choose to live without friends, even if he had all other goods.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。As 引导非限制性定语从句,意为“正如”;even if 引导让步状语从句。

[尝试翻译]正如亚里士多德所说:没有人会选择没有朋友的生活,即使他拥有其他所有财富。

### ▶ 思维品质培养

#### Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. What advantages and problems are there when you are making friends online?

Advantages: It can help remain friends and maintain friendships without missing a beat and it enables us to find people with the same interests and hobbies.

Problems: What we see is often not the whole truth about a person. We'll be cheated if we don't watch out.

2. How do we keep safe when chatting online? (Answers may vary.)

Keep our personal information such as our names, addresses, telephone numbers and pictures secret.

## 课后素养评价(十六)

## I. 阅读理解

I like my close friends a lot. And yet, on an almost daily basis, they shock me. I have a friend who thinks voting is a waste of time; I have another friend who never takes any arrangement to meet at a given time and place seriously.

It's generally held that friends are people with whom we choose to develop relationships because we find their personalities agreeable, or similar to our own, and yet experience regularly contradicts this. What is a friend, really? All that one can safely say is that a friend is someone one likes and wishes to see again.

The truth is that we don't know our friends. Numerous studies show that we tend to assume our friends agree with us more than they really do. The striking part is that the problem doesn't appear to lessen as a friendship deepens. When the researchers Michael Gill and Bill Swann questioned students sharing rooms, they found that, as time passed, people became even more confident in the accuracy of their judgments about the other, and yet, in reality, the judgments grew no more accurate. Two people might become dear friends, yet remain ignorant about vast areas of each other's inner lives.

This seems strange, until you consider, that many of the benefits that friendship provides don't necessarily depend on perfect familiarity; they come from something closer to reliability. Friendship may be less about being drawn to someone's personality than about finding someone willing to keep you company, or lend an ear. A friend provides the "social-identity support" we desire. You needn't be a close match with someone, nor deeply familiar with their mind. And once a friendship has begun, you want to like it, if only to confirm that you made the right decision. We don't want to know everything about our friends. We don't base friendships on what we learn about people; we decide what to learn about people, and what to ignore, based on having decided to be friends.

Perhaps there's something moving about

viewing friendship as an agreement to keep each other company, ignore each other's faults and not probe (刨根问底) too deeply in ways that might weaken the friendship. Perhaps a true friend is someone who doesn't ask many awkward questions.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了真正的友谊和朋友是什么样的。

1. Why does the author tell the stories of his two friends in the first paragraph?

- A. To provide background information.
- B. To introduce the topic of the passage.
- C. To stress the importance of friendship.
- D. To show the difference between friends.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“I have a friend who thinks voting is a waste of time; I have another friend who never takes any arrangement to meet at a given time and place seriously.”和第二段中的“It's generally held that friends are people with whom we choose to develop relationships because we find their personalities agreeable, or similar to our own, and yet experience regularly contradicts this. What is a friend, really?”可知,第一段的目的是引出话题。故选B。

2. What can be concluded from the passage?

- A. Close friends usually know each other in depth.
- B. Real friends are people you like but don't wish to see often.
- C. We do not necessarily share personalities with close friends.
- D. The longer we stay with friends, the more accurately we judge them.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“It's generally held that friends are people with whom we choose to develop relationships because we find their personalities agreeable, or similar to our own, and yet experience regularly contradicts this.”可知,我们和亲密的朋友不一定有相同的性格。故选C。

3. Which statement about friends will the author probably accept?

- A. Stay friends but keep a distance.



- B. It takes a long time to grow an old friend.
- C. Real friends will tell you when your face is dirty.
- D. True friends know all about you and still like you.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,作者认为朋友之间应当保持适当的距离。故选 A。

II. 七选五

It's common that everyone wants to get the most out of his teenage years. Working hard as a teen can help you develop good habits you can carry into adulthood. There are many ways you can upgrade your life as a teenager.

Discover what inspires you. Passions should make you feel excited. Considering what inspires you in your day-to-day life can help you make clear of passions. 1 This may mean you have a passion for art or art history. Spend your time pouring your energies into your personal passions.

2 It's important to have goals as a teen, as they can help shape your adult life. Writing down a lot of goals for a given year, term, or summer can help you upgrade your life.

Specific and realistic goals work best. 3 For example, maybe you're interested in animal protection. A goal like "I will avoid using products tested on

animals" is a more specific goal than "I will do my part to end animal cruelty".

Do not give in to peer (同龄人) pressure. It's great to be open to trying new things as a teen, and important to make the most of your teenage years.

4 True friends will not try to pressure you into doing something you don't want to do. Peer pressure comes in different forms, and can create unnecessary stress and tension in your life. Know how to tell and avoid peer pressure.

Accept your strengths and weaknesses. Everyone is good at different things. You may not have a gift for writing, but you may be good at science courses.

5 You cannot succeed in everything, and that's okay.

- A. Do not limit yourself as a teenager.
- B. Set your own goals for a special period.
- C. Focus on what you're good at and what you enjoy.
- D. Maybe you love reading about artists or find going to art museums inspiring.
- E. However, you should not do anything that makes you feel uncomfortable or unsafe.
- F. You'll end up meeting people your own age and developing a group of friends at work.
- G. That means when writing goals you should state clearly how you want to go after these things.

答案:1~5 DBGEC

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. Charlie Chaplin is a figure **familiar** to people all over the world. 熟悉的
- 2. It is important to **maintain** a constant (恒定的) temperature inside the greenhouse. 保持, 维持
- 3. When you have selected the file you want, you can **click** here to download (下载) it. 点击(鼠标)
- 4. I'll need regular **updates** on the progress of the project. 最新消息
- 5. The teacher drew a **diagram** showing how the blood flows (流) through the heart.

图解, 示意图

- 6. The shop which is next to my apartment sells a wide range of **goods**. 商品

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>advance</u> n. 进步, 进展	advanced <i>adj.</i> 先进的; 高级的; 高等的
<u>significantly</u> <i>adv.</i> 重大地, 显著地	significant <i>adj.</i> 有意义的; 重要的 significance <i>n.</i> 意义; 含义; 重要性

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>enable</u> <i>v.</i> 使可能, 使发生	<u>able</u> <i>adj.</i> 有能力的 <u>ability</u> <i>n.</i> 能力; 才能
<u>unusual</u> <i>adj.</i> 异常的, 不平常的	<u>usual</u> <i>adj.</i> 通常的 <u>usually</u> <i>adv.</i> 通常地; 正常地; 经常地
<u>tend</u> <i>v.</i> 易于做某事, 往往会发生某事	<u>tendency</u> <i>n.</i> 倾向; 趋势
<u>criminal</u> <i>n.</i> 罪犯	<u>crime</u> <i>n.</i> 犯罪活动; 罪行
<u>prove</u> <i>v.</i> 证明, 证实	<u>proof</u> <i>n.</i> 证据; 证明 <i>adj.</i> 防……的, 抗……的

III. 补全短语

- lose track of 不了解……的情况, 不了解……的动态
- thanks to 归功于……, 多亏……
- connect... with... 使……与……连接; 把……与……联系起来
- stay in touch with 与……保持联系

- be up to sth. 正在做着或忙于某事
- keep in mind 记住, 牢记

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: “疑问词+ever”引导让步状语从句  
Whatever our hobbies, the Internet can connect us with others who also enjoy doing them, even if they live on the other side of the world.  
不管我们的爱好是什么, 互联网都能把我们和其他喜欢做这些事情的人联系起来, 即使他们生活在世界的另一端。
- 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句  
But we need to keep in mind that what we see on social media is often not the whole truth about a person.  
但我们需要谨记, 我们在社交媒体上看到的往往不是一个人的全部真相。
- 句型公式: even if 引导让步状语从句  
As Aristotle said, no one would choose to live without friends, even if he had all other goods.  
正如亚里士多德所说的: 没有人会选择没有朋友的生活, 即使他拥有其他所有财富。

任务型课堂

1. prefer *v.* 更喜欢

[教材原文] How do you prefer to make friends?  
你更喜欢怎样交朋友?

[归纳拓展]

(1) prefer to do/doing sth. 更愿意做某事  
prefer sb. to do sth. 宁愿某人做某事  
prefer (doing) sth. to (doing) sth. = prefer to do sth. rather than do sth. 宁愿(做)某事……也不愿(做)某事

(2) preference *n.* 偏爱; 爱好  
have a preference for 喜好……, 偏爱……

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- I prefer him to come (come) to see me right now.
- Nowadays many children prefer surfing (surf) the Internet at home to taking exercise outdoors.
- I have a preference (prefer) for coffee while my father likes tea.
- He always prefers riding (ride) a bike to taking a crowded bus.

2. advance *n.* 进步, 进展

[教材原文] Thanks to advances in technology, how we make friends and communicate with them has changed significantly.

得益于科技的进步, 我们结交朋友、与朋友沟通的方式发生了很大的变化。

[归纳拓展]

- make an advance/advances in 在某方面有进步/发展
- in advance (=ahead of time) 提前
- advanced *adj.* 高级的; 高等的; 先进的

名师点拨

advance 还可用作动词, 意为“前进; 促进”; 用作形容词时, 意为“预先的, 事先的”。

[即学即练]

- 写出下列句中 advance 的词性和含义  
① There have been great advances in medicine in the last ten years. *n.* 进步, 进展  
② This will further advance the friendly relations between the two countries. *v.* 促进



5. Helen is a very shy girl and it is not easy for her to make friends with others.
6. Freedom is perhaps what we all long for.
7. Stay in touch with those who matter to you.
8. We used to be friends, but lost track of each other afterwards.

### III. 完成句子

1. Whatever happens, you shouldn't lose heart.  
无论发生什么事,你都不要丧失信心。
2. It's up to you to decide whether we buy this set of furniture or not.  
由你决定我们是否买这套家具。
3. What if it rains tomorrow?  
倘若明天下雨将会怎样呢?
4. Even if you read English easily, you'll find it is another cup of tea to make conversations in English.  
即便你读起英语来很容易,你会发现用英语进行对话是另外一回事。
5. The way (that/in which) he teaches us in class is very interesting.  
他给我们上课的方式非常有趣。

### IV. 完形填空

In December, 2009, 46-year-old Phil Belfiore was teaching his students how to write a pastiche (模仿作品) of Robert Frost's poem. He liked the 1 he had written for them, so he 2 it on his answering machine (电话答录机). That brought an unusual 3 to him.

When Phil returned from New Year vacation, he listened to 4. One gentleman said he was sorry for dialing wrongly. He added he heartily 5 the poem. Phil laughed and thought nothing more about it. 6, the phone rang days later. Phil recognised the voice. "He 7 for bothering me, but he wanted to hear the poem again," recalls Phil. The caller is John, 73 years old. It turned out that his brother's number was 8 to Phil's; thus the wrong call happened. "I told him to call back anytime."

That was 11 years ago. They've talked regularly ever since. John 9 most calls. Phil will ring if a long time has passed and he has any 10 to worry. "We always 11 each other when there's been a storm or a sports event," Phil says. Gradually, their conversations grew more 12. "We talk about health, finances, and whatever else comes up."

They planned twice to visit the other, but circumstances 13 their plans. They haven't gone to a game or had a coffee together. Neither 14 the "haven't", as picking up the phone is enough. "My best friend is someone I've not yet 15," says John.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了电话答录机上的一首诗以及一通打错的电话为 Phil 和 John 开启一段特殊友谊的故事。

1. A. story B. example  
C. image D. programme  
B 根据上文 "46-year-old Phil Belfiore was teaching his students how to write a pastiche (模仿作品) of Robert Frost's poem" 可知,此处表示 Phil 自己仿写了一首诗给学生作范例。故选 B。
2. A. recorded B. tested  
C. spread D. explained  
A 根据下文的 "he wanted to hear the poem again" 可知,Phil 把自己写的诗录成了电话答录机的留言。故选 A。
3. A. vacation B. friendship  
C. lesson D. conversation  
B 根据下文对 Phil 和 John 故事的介绍,尤其是最后一段中的 "'My best friend is someone I've not yet 15,' says John." 可知,此处表示这件事带给 Phil 带来了一段不寻常的友谊。故选 B。
4. A. holiday wishes B. latest news  
C. voice messages D. course evaluation  
C 根据上文的 "on his answering machine (电话答录机)" 和下文的 "One gentleman said" 可知,Phil 度假回来后,开始听电话答录机中的语音信息。故选 C。
5. A. understood B. learnt  
C. recommended D. enjoyed  
D 根据下文的 "he wanted to hear the poem again" 可知,打错电话的人说他非常喜欢那首诗。故选 D。
6. A. Therefore B. Instead  
C. However D. Moreover  
C 根据语境可知,Phil 听了对方的留言后,笑了笑,没再多想这件事,但是几天过后,那人又打来了电话,前后之间存在转折关系。故选 C。
7. A. longed B. apologised  
C. accounted D. allowed

B 根据语境和常识可知,此处表示 Phil 回忆说:“他为打扰到我道歉,但是他想再听一遍那首诗。”故选 B。

8. A. equal                      B. related  
C. subject                     D. close

D 根据下文“thus the wrong call happened”可知,因为 Phil 的电话号码和他哥哥的很相似,所以他才会打错电话。故选 D。

9. A. makes                     B. misses  
C. suggests                    D. expects

A 根据下文“Phil will ring if a long time has passed and he has any 10 to worry.”可知,多数时候都是 John 先打电话。make phone calls“打电话”。故选 A。

10. A. problem                B. time  
C. reason                    D. choice

C 根据上文“John 9 most calls.”可知,总是 John 先打来电话,如果长时间他不打来电话,Phil 有理由担心,他便会打电话过去。故选 C。

11. A. protect                  B. visit  
C. inspire                    D. contact

D 根据下文的“when there’s been a storm or a

sports event”可知,当发生暴风雨或体育赛事时,他们总是互相联系。故选 D。

12. A. commercial            B. personal  
C. unique                    D. common

B 根据上文“when there’s been a storm or a sports event”和下文“We talk about health, finances”可知,他们交谈的内容越来越私人化。故选 B。

13. A. crossed up              B. let on  
C. kept to                    D. consisted of

A 根据下文的“‘They haven’t gone to a game or had a coffee together.’”可知,有两次他们计划拜访对方,但是现实情况打乱了他们的计划。cross up“搅乱,彻底破坏”。故选 A。

14. A. forgets                  B. mentions  
C. imagines                  D. minds

D 根据下文的“as picking up the phone is enough”可知,他们都不介意没有见过彼此。故选 D。

15. A. heard                    B. thanked  
C. met                        D. left

C 根据语境可知,John 和 Phil 他们两个从来都没有见过面,因此 John 说他最好的朋友是他尚未见过的人。故选 C。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Since his parents died early, he had to earn his own living when he was a **teenager**.  
青少年,十几岁的孩子(13 到 19 岁之间的孩子)
2. **Pour** the honey into the bowl and mix it thoroughly with water. 倒
3. You should put some water into the **pot** before adding the rice. 锅
4. A person should have at least 200 **grams** of fruit and vegetables every day. 克
5. We are still looking for someone who combines all the necessary **qualities**. 素质,品德
6. Let’s **postpone** making a decision until we have more information. 使(事件、行动等)延期,推迟

7. The man went into the shop and bought a **pack** of gum which cost him \$4. 小盒
8. To keep slim, she only had a **slice** of bread for her breakfast. 片

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>inspiring</u> <i>adj.</i> 鼓舞人心的,启发灵感的	inspire <i>v.</i> 鼓舞;激励
	inspiration <i>n.</i> 鼓舞;启示;灵感
<u>comfort</u> <i>n.</i> 安慰,慰藉	comfortable <i>adj.</i> 使人舒服的;舒适的;安逸的;自在的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>patience</u> <i>n.</i> 耐心	<u>patient</u> <i>adj.</i> 有耐心的 <i>n.</i> 病人 <u>patiently</u> <i>adv.</i> 耐心地
<u>passion</u> <i>n.</i> 强烈的情感, 激情	<u>passionate</u> <i>adj.</i> 热诚的; 狂热的
<u>generosity</u> <i>n.</i> 慷慨, 大方	<u>generous</u> <i>adj.</i> 慷慨的, 大方的; 宽宏大量的, 仁慈的
<u>humour</u> <i>n.</i> 幽默感	<u>humorous</u> <i>adj.</i> 幽默的
<u>anxious</u> <i>adj.</i> 焦虑的, 不安的	<u>anxiously</u> <i>adv.</i> 焦虑地 <u>anxiety</u> <i>n.</i> 焦虑, 忧虑; 渴望
<u>distance</u> <i>v.</i> 使与……保持距离, 撇清和……的关系 <i>n.</i> 距离	<u>distant</u> <i>adj.</i> 遥远的; 冷漠的

III. 补全短语

1. ask sb. for help 向某人寻求帮助
2. be open to 对……开放
3. feel down 感到沮丧, 情绪消沉

4. come up 即将发生(或出现); 被提及; 升起
5. mix... with... 把……和……混合
6. up to 高达
7. agree on sth. 对某事(物)有同样的看法, 商定(同意)某事
8. at first 最初; 首先
9. according to 根据

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: it 作形式主语  
At first it was difficult to communicate with her.  
起初和她交流很困难。
2. 句型公式: it 作形式宾语  
This makes it clear to the other person that you are giving them a choice.  
这能向其他人清楚地表明, 你正在给他们一个选择。
3. 句型公式: How about...?  
How about sending him funny postcards from every place we visit?  
从我们参观的每一个地方寄给他有趣的明信片怎么样?

任务型课堂

1. anxious *adj.* 焦虑的, 不安的

[教材原文]... the ability to wait without becoming **anxious** or angry

等待时不会变得焦虑或生气的的能力

[归纳拓展]

(1) be anxious about/for 为……担心/忧虑

be anxious to do sth. 渴望/急于做某事

be anxious for 渴望得到……

(2) anxiously *adv.* 焦急地, 忧虑地

(3) anxiety *n.* 焦虑, 忧虑; 渴望

with anxiety 焦急地, 忧虑地

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① As is known to all, everyone is anxious for success.
- ② These students were anxious to know (know) the results of the exam.
- ③ Music seemed to quiet her anxiety (anxious) and loneliness.
- ④ After the college entrance examination, the students were all waiting anxiously (anxious) for the results.

2. distance *v.* 使与……保持距离, 撇清和……的关系 *n.* 距离

[教材原文]... use a past tense to **distance** yourself from the suggestion: *I was wondering whether...*  
用过去时使自己远离这个建议; 我想知道……

[归纳拓展]

(1) distance sb. from sth. 使某人远离某事, 使某人撇清和某事的关系

in the distance 在远方, 在远处

at a distance 从远处; 隔一段距离

at a distance of 相距……, 在……远的地方

(2) distant *adj.* 遥远的; 冷漠的

be distant from 离……遥远

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① The noise of the car died away in the distance.
- ② Now and then he stepped back to look at his work at a distance.
- ③ The dog looked dangerous, so I decided to distance myself from it.
- ④ The time we spent together is now a distant (distance) memory.



语法探究

关系代词引导的定语从句

「语法感知」

- ①The digital age also enables us to find people **who** share our interests, such as collecting model cars or playing an unusual instrument.
- ②On social media sites, people tend to post only positive updates **that** make them appear happy and friendly.
- ③Born in 476 BC, he came from a family **which** was very poor.
- ④Do you know the girl **whose** English is excellent?
- ⑤The woman (**whom**) you saw just now is our teacher.
- ⑥Nowadays, we can move around the world and still stay in touch with the people (**that**) we want to remain friends with.

1. 句①②③中,定语从句的关系词 who, that, which 是关系代词,均在定语从句中充当主语,不可省略。
2. 句④中,定语从句的关系词 whose 是关系代词,在定语从句中充当定语,不可省略。
3. 句⑤⑥中,定语从句的关系词 whom, that 是关系代词,在定语从句中充当宾语,可以省略。

名师点拨

- 定语从句、先行词、关系词的概念:
- (1)在复合句中,修饰某一名词、代词或整个主句的从句叫作定语从句。
- (2)被定语从句修饰的名词或代词叫作先行词。
- (3)连接先行词和定语从句的词叫作关系词。关系词的主要作用是连接主句和从句,同时指代先行词,并在从句中充当一定的句子成分。关系词分为关系代词和关系副词两种。

「语法精讲」

一、关系代词的指代及功能

关系代词	在从句中所作成分	先行词
who	指人,在定语从句中作主语、宾语和表语	指人的名词
whom	指人,在定语从句中作宾语,可以省略也可用 who/that 代替	指人的名词

续表

关系代词	在从句中所作成分	先行词
whose	指人或物,在定语从句中作定语,相当于“the+名词+of which/whom”和“of which/whom+the+名词”的形式	指人或物的名词
that	指人或物,在定语从句中作主语、宾语或表语,作宾语时可以省略	指人或物的名词
which	指物,在定语从句中作主语、宾语,作宾语时可以省略	指物的名词

There is a girl **who** wants to see you.  
有个女孩想见你。

The old man **who/whom/that** you saw yesterday is a thinker.  
你昨天见到的那位老人是一个思想家。

This is the scientist **whose** name is known all over the country.  
→This is the scientist **the name of whom** is known all over the country.  
这就是那位全国知名的科学家。

Please pass me the book **whose** cover is green.  
→Please pass me the book **the cover of which** is green.  
请递给我那本绿色封面的书。

Please find a room **which/that** is big enough for all of us to live in.  
请找一间足够住下我们所有人的房间。

This is the house (**which/that**) we bought last month.  
这是我们上个月买的那幢房子。

二、限制性定语从句中,关系代词用 **that** 不用 **which** 的情况

1. 当先行词为 all, everything, nothing, anything, little, much 等不定代词或先行词被这些词修饰时;  
Can you give me anything **that** has no sugar inside?  
能不能给我点儿里面没有糖的东西?

2. 当先行词是序数词、形容词最高级或先行词被序数词、形容词最高级修饰时;

This is the first two-storey bus **that** runs in our city.

这是第一辆运行于我市的双层公交车。

3. 当先行词被 the only, the very, the same, the right 等修饰时;

Guilin is the most beautiful city **that** I have ever visited.

桂林是我游览过的最美丽的城市。

This is the very scarf **that** Mother has been looking for.

这就是妈妈一直在找的那条围巾。

4. 当先行词既有人又有物时;

Can you tell me the people and events **that** you saw in Britain?

你能告诉我你在英国见到的人和事吗?

5. 当先行词在定语从句中作表语时;

Shanghai is no longer the city **that** it used to be.

上海已不是它过去那个样子了。

6. 当主语是以 which 开头的疑问句时。

Which are the books **that** you bought for me?

哪些是你为我买的书?

### 三、关系代词用 which 不用 that 的情况

1. 在定语从句中作介词的宾语,且介词位于关系代词前时;

This is the room in **which** he lives.

这是他住的房间。

2. 引导非限制性定语从句时;

Tom came back, **which** made us very happy.

汤姆回来了,这使我们很高兴。

3. 在限制性定语从句中,如果有两个定语从句,其中前一句的关系代词是 that,那么后一句的关系代词就要用 which。

Let me show you the novel **that** I borrowed from the library **which** was newly open.

让我给你看看那本刚刚从新开业的图书馆借来的小说。

## 「语法冲关」

### I. 单句语法填空

- The first thing that he did after arriving home was doing his homework.
- My father bought a new bike for me whose price added up to more than 1,000 yuan.
- Anyone who has helped to save the drowning girl is worth praising.
- Do you still remember the chicken farm that/which we visited three months ago?
- All that we need is enough rest after long hours' work.
- On the train I saw a girl who/that I thought was your sister.
- I wish to thank Professor Brown, without whose help I would never have got this.
- I missed the teachers and the kindergarten that my parents thought highly of.

### II. 完成句子

- I do have a few suggestions which/that you should pay attention to.  
我的确有几条建议需要你注意。
- The old man whom/who/that they are waiting for is Professor Li.  
他们正在等的那位老人是李教授。
- In senior high school you will study more courses which/that are different from your junior middle school courses.  
在高中,你将学习更多不同于初中的课程。

## 课后素养评价(十八)

### I. 词语填空

in comfort; at a distance of; anxious;  
patient; passion; teenager; inspiring; quality

- The sound of the waterfall can be heard at a distance of two miles.
- They are collected from the airport upon arrival and brought to their accommodation in comfort.

- Sue was anxious about her son because it was the first time that he had lived abroad alone.
- What inspiring news this is!
- We would like to thank them for their patience and understanding.
- The few hours I spent in the library had brought back my passion for reading.

7. Nowadays most teenagers find it difficult to stop playing computer games.
8. I'm not sure whether the shirt is of good quality, but I'll buy one online anyhow.

## II. 单句语法填空

1. When the girl studied in England, she lived with a host family whose members always helped her.
2. The man is talking about the teachers and things that encouraged him greatly in school.
3. The man who/that is talking with my father is a policeman.
4. The professor who/that/whom you wish to see has gone abroad.
5. Do you have anything that is important to tell me?
6. A shop should keep a stock (储备物) of those goods which/that sell best.
7. Please send us all the information that you have about the interviewees for the position.
8. Let's postpone making (make) a decision until we have more information.
9. We make it a rule to visit (visit) the old every weekend.

## III. 阅读理解

Growing up with movies such as *High School Musical* and *Grease*, which presented the ideal (理想的) high school friendships, we sometimes expect a perfect relationship. Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school.

"I was always worried about what my friends thought about me. Sometimes my friends would make fun of what I wore or what I would do. I always tried to get along well with them, but I realised how happy I was once I stopped contacting them after high school," said Elisha, Class of 2020.

Most teens have not realised the big question when dealing with high school problems. In five

years, will this still matter? It is hard looking at the big picture when the problems are in front of you, which is understandable. However, most teens need a moment to reflect (反思) and question if the problem matters in a long time.

Briana, a high school teacher, said, "Now, I am in contact with two high school friends. I think the friendship experiences I had in high school shaped who I am because I learned to be open-minded and befriend all kinds of people. I learned to see people for who they are, not what they wear or who they play with. I learned most of all how to be a good friend."

High school is a small part of your life, but it has a huge influence on who you will become and where you will go. Friendships and relationships help shape who you are, whether they are good or bad. Lessons are brought, and lessons are learned.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了高中的友谊会塑造青少年。

1. Why did the author mention the two movies in the first paragraph?
  - A. To introduce the topic of the passage.
  - B. To explain what a high school friendship is.
  - C. To recommend these two movies to readers.
  - D. To attract readers' attention to these two movies.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school.”以及下文对高中友谊的论述可推知,第一段提到这两部电影是为了引出本文的主题——高中的友谊塑造了青少年。故选 A。
2. What did Elisha think of her “friends”?
  - A. They made her unhappy.
  - B. They cared about her behaviour.
  - C. They got along well with her.
  - D. They were always worried about her.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段 Elisha 所说的话“I was always worried about what my friends thought about me. Sometimes my friends would make fun of what I wore or what I would do. I always tried to get along well with them, but I realised how happy I was once I stopped contacting them after high school”可知, Elisha 认为她的“朋友”让她不开心。故选 A。

3. Why did Briana think her friendship experiences shape her?

- A. She learned to play with her friends.
- B. She learned to make different friends.
- C. She learned to shape her friends' minds.
- D. She learned to wear just like her friends.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段 Briana 所说的话“I think the friendship experiences I had in high school shaped who I am because I learned to be

open-minded and befriend all kinds of people.”可知, Briana 认为她的友谊塑造了她, 是因为她学会了与各种各样的人交朋友。故选 B。

4. What's the passage mainly about?

- A. Failed friendships make teens worried.
- B. Good friendships greatly influence teens.
- C. High school friendships help to shape teens.
- D. Friendships are difficult for teens to deal with.

C 主旨大意题。根据文章的主要内容, 尤其是第一段中的“Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school.”和最后一段的内容可知, 本文主要论述了高中的友谊能够帮助塑造青少年, 无论好坏。故选 C。

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. ordinary *adj.* 普通的, 平常的
2. fortune *n.* 大笔的钱, 巨款
3. correspond *v.* 通信
4. partner *n.* 伙伴, 搭档
5. appointed *adj.* 约定的, 指定的
6. strike *v.* 划(火柴)
7. plain *adj.* 简单的, 朴素的
8. scene *n.* 场景
9. bitterly *adv.* 痛苦地, 愤恨地
10. ashamed *adj.* 感到不好意思的, 难为情的
11. unfold *v.* (卷着的东西) 展开, 打开
12. location *n.* 地点, 位置
13. surroundings *n.* 周围的事物, 环境
14. personality *n.* 个性, 性格
15. atmosphere *n.* 气氛, 氛围, 环境
16. make one's fortune 发财

17. ought to 应该, 应当

18. turn up (意外地或终于) 出现

19. work out 计算出; 解决; 锻炼身体; 成功地发展

20. hear from 收到……的来信

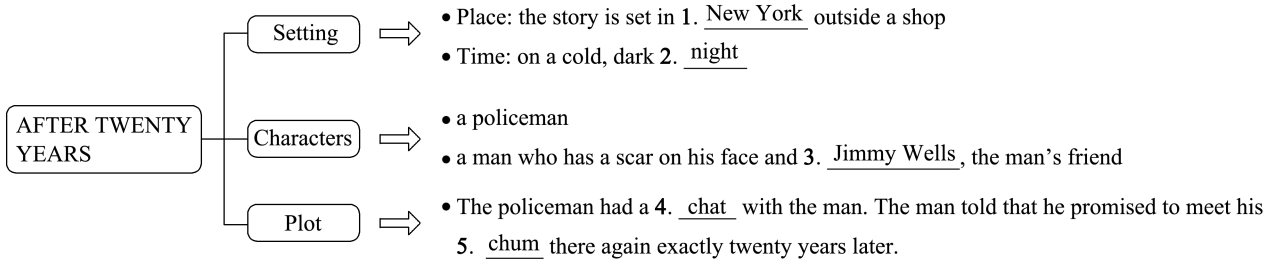
(二) 阅读词汇

1. scar *n.* 伤疤
2. dine *v.* 进餐
3. chum *n.* 好朋友
4. chap *n.* 小伙子, 家伙
5. drag *v.* 拖, 拉
6. destiny *n.* 命运, 天命
7. proposition *n.* 事业, 生意
8. hustle *v.* 拼命干, 努力干
9. staunch *adj.* 坚定的, 忠实可靠的
10. excerpt *n.* 摘录, 节录
11. cigar *n.* 雪茄烟
12. leave work 下班

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What's the writer's purpose in writing this text?
- A. To change people's usual impression of friendship.
- B. To tell us how difficult it is to meet a person.
- C. To warn us not to be late for meeting friends.
- D. To show the friendship between the two former friends.

答案:D

2. What was the policeman doing when seeing a man?
- A. Searching for a criminal.
- B. Going on a patrol (巡逻).
- C. Dealing with an urgent thing.
- D. Helping the man in need.

答案:B

3. What promise did Jimmy and the man make before they parted?
- A. Making a large fortune.
- B. Working out their destiny.
- C. Meeting again at the same place.
- D. Not giving up the hope of living.

答案:C

4. What do we know about Jimmy?
- A. He had a special feeling for New York.
- B. He didn't know other places in the world.
- C. He wanted to live a meaningful life alone.
- D. He had no idea of what his future would be like.

答案:A

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

The story *After Twenty Years* is set 1. in New York on a cold, dark night. It is about two friends named Bob and Jimmy. Twenty years ago, Bob 2. dined (dine) at a restaurant with his friend Jimmy. He decided to leave for the West 3. to make (make) his fortune, but Jimmy would rather stay in New York. They made a promise that they would meet at the place 4. where they had dined.

During the twenty years, Bob kept hustling around over the West pretty lively and Jimmy became 5. a policeman. Bob kept the 6. appointment (appoint) and came back, believing that Jimmy would come if he was alive, because he was the 7. truest (true), staunchest old chap in the world. He struck a match to light his cigar, 8. waiting (wait) for his friend. Jimmy arrived at the appointed place but found Bob was just the man 9. wanted (want) in Chicago.

However, Jimmy couldn't catch his best friend 10. himself (he), so he asked a plain clothes policeman to do it.

Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. But I know Jimmy will meet me here if he's alive, for he always was the truest, staunchest old chap in the world.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。for 是并列连词，意为“因为”。第一个分句是主从复合句，I know Jimmy will meet me here 是主句，其中包含一个省略了 that 的宾语从句；if 引导条件状语从句。

[尝试翻译]但是我知道，只要吉米还活着，他就会

来这里和我见面,因为他一直是这世界上最真诚、最可靠的老伙计。

2. I came a thousand miles to stand in this door tonight, and it's worth it if my old partner turns up.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。在 and 前的分句中, to stand in this door tonight 为不定式短语作目的状语;在 and 后的分句中, if 引导条件状语从句。

[尝试翻译]今晚,我从千里之外赶来站在这扇门前,只要我的老朋友出现,这就是值得的。

## 思维品质培养

### Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. What did the man experience in the past twenty years?

He kept hustling around over the West pretty lively.

2. Do you know the end of the story?

Yes. The policeman was Jimmy. He came for the appointment, but arrested his friend eventually.

## 课后素养评价(十九)

### I. 单词拼写

- I differ with my partner (伙伴) sometimes but we usually agree.
- I wonder whether he is corresponding (通信) with his pen friend.
- Unfortunately, the illness can lead to changes in personality (性格).
- A new chapter in a novel is something like a new scene (场景) in a play.
- The atmosphere (气氛) at lunch was relaxed.
- Now cars have entered into ordinary (普通的) families.
- It suddenly struck (突然想起) me that we ought to make a new plan.
- I'm ashamed (难为情的) to tell my parents that I failed the test.
- These houses which are in a really good location (位置) cost a lot of money.
- Appreciate your surroundings (环境) and live life as wonderful as you can.

### II. 短语填空

work out; turn up; make a fortune;  
hear from; ought to; on earth

- Do you think that he didn't turn up by accident or by design?
- Have you heard from Jane since she moved to Beijing?
- Now there are many young men in our society dreaming of making a fortune without hard work.
- After they discussed for several days, they finally

worked out a new plan.

- What on earth did you tell her? The expression on her face suggested that she was more than angry.
- We ought to work hard to make our dreams come true.

### III. 完成句子

- But for the encouraging cheers from the audience, our team couldn't have won such an important match.  
要不是观众们鼓励性的欢呼,我们队不可能赢得这么重要的比赛。
- To get more information, you can visit our website.  
想获取更多信息,你可以访问我们的网站。
- Whatever/No matter what happens, I will always carry this joy with me.  
不管发生什么,我会让这份快乐一直伴随着自己。
- Unfortunately, he had his right leg injured during the training.  
不幸的是,他在训练中把右腿弄伤了。
- His new book based on a true story is to be published next week.  
他的新书以真实的故事为蓝本,将于下周出版。

### IV. 七选五

Defining what an ideal friend is like is not an easy task. 1 However, generally speaking, there are certain qualities that most people would consider as characteristics of an ideal friend.

The ideal friend knows how to show weakness. The ideal friends don't try to prove how successful they are. 2 They show how much they trust us



by admitting failings and sorrows. They offer us the gift of their vulnerability (脆弱).

3 More often than it's comfortable to admit, we don't quite know what we think until a proper friend gently asks us to expand on a thought, to explain why we're impressed by it and to find good answers to possible objections. They see the potential in what we're saying when we can't.

The proper friend helps build our self-understanding. There are so many things we don't entirely comprehend about who we are. We find it hard to pin down our goals. 4 We might have some strong opinions, but it can be difficult to explain really why these ideas matter to us. The right friend listens and helps us piece together the best account of our fears and excitements.

They help us to like ourselves. Normally we're intently alive to our own shortcomings. It's more

obvious, from our point of view, what's disappointing about us than what's attractive. We need a friend because we're likely to be so very unfriendly towards ourselves. 5

- A. A true friend helps us think.
- B. We get defensive and we don't really know why.
- C. Loyalty is a common quality given to ideal friends.
- D. The good friend likes us in ways we're not easily able to.
- E. Everyone has their own understanding of what the ideal friend is like.
- F. On the contrary, they let us know embarrassing things about themselves.
- G. They care for your well-being over any issues that may arise between you and them.

答案:1~5 EFABD

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. She managed to **drag** the single bed to her bedroom. 拖,拉
- 2. Find a **partner** and practise these new dance steps. 伙伴,搭档
- 3. The man **struck** a match and made a fire in the cave. 划(火柴)
- 4. **Plain** and simple clothes are appropriate for school wear. 朴素的
- 5. I like that restaurant because it has a relaxing **atmosphere**. 气氛,氛围,环境
- 6. Strange things sometimes happen to **ordinary** people. 普通的
- 7. He complained **bitterly** that he had been unfairly treated. 痛苦地,愤恨地

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>fortune</u> <i>n.</i> 大笔的钱, 巨款	<u>fortunate</u> <i>adj.</i> 幸运的
	<u>fortunately</u> <i>adv.</i> 幸运地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>correspond</u> <i>v.</i> 通信	<u>correspondence</u> <i>n.</i> 通信联系; 往来书信
	<u>corresponding</u> <i>adj.</i> 符合的, 相应的, 相关的
<u>appointed</u> <i>adj.</i> 约定的, 指定的	<u>appoint</u> <i>v.</i> 安排, 确定(时间、地点); 任命, 委派
	<u>appointment</u> <i>n.</i> 预约, 约定; 任命, 委派
<u>location</u> <i>n.</i> 地点, 位置	<u>locate</u> <i>v.</i> 找出……的准确位置; 确定……的准确地点; 把……安置在(或建造于)
	<u>located</u> <i>adj.</i> 位于……的, 坐落在
<u>scene</u> <i>n.</i> 场景, 场面; (戏剧中的)一场; 发生地点, 现场; 景色, 景象	<u>scenery</u> <i>n.</i> 风景, 景色
	<u>scenic</u> <i>adj.</i> 景色优美的

## III. 补全短语

1. be set in 以……为背景
2. start for 出发去
3. make one's fortune 发财
4. ought to 应该, 应当
5. hear from 收到……的来信
6. turn up (意外地或终于) 出现
7. be ashamed of 为……感到羞耻
8. long for 渴望
9. work out 计算出; 解决; 锻炼身体; 成功地发展
10. come up with 提出, 想出(计划、想法等); 追赶上

## IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语

The next morning I was to start for the West to

make my fortune.

第二天一早我就要去西部赚大钱了。

2. 句型公式: “have sth. done” 结构

We figured that in twenty years each of us ought to have our destiny worked out and our fortunes made, whatever they were going to be.

我们当时觉得, 不管要做什么, 二十年的时间足够自己找到出路、赚到钱。

3. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语

Stepping out of jail into the cold wind, Bob, now 58, felt lost and helpless.

从监狱里出来走进寒风中, 现年 58 岁的鲍勃感到茫然无助。

## 任务型课堂

1. **ashamed** *adj.* 感到不好意思的, 难为情的; 羞耻的, 惭愧的

[教材原文] Was he **ashamed** of having a friend like me?

他为我有这样的朋友感到耻辱吗?

[归纳拓展]

(1) be/feel ashamed of (doing) sth. 对(做)某事感到不好意思/难为情/惭愧/羞耻

be ashamed to do sth. 耻于做某事

(2) shame *n.* 惭愧, 羞耻, 羞愧 *v.* 使蒙羞, 使惭愧  
It's a shame that.../What a shame that... 真遗憾/多可惜……

(3) shameful *adj.* (行为)可耻的; 不道德的

## 名师点拨

ashamed 指人感到羞耻、惭愧、不好意思;  
shameful 指事情或行为本身可耻、不道德。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He was ashamed of asking (ask) such a simple question.

② It's shameful (shame) the way some people treat their pets.

(2) 完成句子

① I feel/am ashamed of my shameful behaviour; I apologise to you.

我为自己可耻的行为感到惭愧, 我向你道歉。

② I'm ashamed to tell you that I lied to her.

我很惭愧地告诉你, 我对她撒了谎。

③ It's a shame that/What a shame that you can't stay for dinner!

你不能留下来吃晚饭真遗憾!

2. **surroundings** *n.* 周围的事物, 环境

[教材原文] Settings: time, location and descriptions of the environment or **surroundings** help your readers picture the scene.

背景: 可以帮助读者想象场景的时间、地点以及对环境或周围事物的描述。

[归纳拓展]

(1) surround *v.* 环绕, 围绕; 包围

surround... with... 用……包围/围绕……

be surrounded by/with... 被……包围/围绕

(2) surrounding *adj.* 附近的; 四周的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Some insects take on the colours of their surroundings (surround) to protect themselves.

② It attracts travellers to come over to cycle and walk through the surrounding (surround) forests.

(2) 完成句子

Surrounded with/by trees and flowers, the villa looks very beautiful.

花草树木环绕周围的别墅看起来很漂亮。



「典题示例」

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jenny was the only child in her family. She had a quarrel with her mother that afternoon and she ran out of the house angrily. She couldn't help weeping sorrowfully when she thought of the scolding from her mother. Having wandered aimlessly in the street for hours, she felt a little hungry and wished for something to eat. She stood beside a stand for a while, watching the middle-aged seller busy doing his business. However, with no money in hand, she gave a sigh and had to leave.

The seller behind the stand noticed the young girl and asked, "Hey, girl, do you want to have the noodles?"

"Oh, yes, but I don't have money on me," she replied.

"That's nothing. I'll treat you today," said the man. "Come in."

The seller brought her a bowl of noodles, the smell so attractive. As she was eating, Jenny cried silently.

"What is it?" asked the man kindly.

"Nothing. Actually I was just touched by your kindness!" said Jenny as she wiped her tears. "Even a stranger on the street will give me a bowl of noodles, while my mother drove me out of the house. She showed no care for me. She is so merciless compared to a stranger!"

Hearing the words, the seller smiled, "Girl, do you really think so? I only gave you a bowl of noodles and you thanked me a lot. But it is your mother who has raised you since you were a baby. Can you number the times she cooked for you? Have you expressed your gratitude to her?"

Jenny sat there, speechless and numb with shock; she remembered her mother's familiar face and weathered hands. "Why didn't I think of that? A bowl of noodles from a stranger made me feel indebted. Why haven't I thanked my mum for what she has done for me?"

On the way home, Jenny made up her mind to make an apology to her mother for her rudeness as soon as she arrived home.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Approaching the doorway, \_\_\_\_\_

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back. \_\_\_\_\_

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. Jenny 到家门口后的情景 2. Jenny 向妈妈道歉,母女俩相互原谅的过程

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① When she knocked at the door, she found the door locked (她发现门锁着) and her mother out.
- ② Tired and sad (又累又难过), she sat down in front of the house.
- ③ Is she really so angry with me that (很生我的气以至于) she doesn't want to take care of me?
- ④ Again, the scene of the quarrel (争吵的情景) appeared in her mind.
- ⑤ The tears rolled down (滚落了下来).
- ⑥ Jenny couldn't help hugging (禁不住抱住) her mother tightly.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 将 Step 2 中句①升级为含有现在分词短语作状语的句子。  
When knocking at the door, she found the door locked and her mother out.
- ② 将 Step 2 中句⑤升级为完全倒装句。  
Down rolled the tears.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Approaching the doorway, Jenny took a deep

breath. When knocking at the door, she found the door locked and her mother out. Tired and sad, she sat down in front of the house. “Where might my mother be?” she wondered. “Is she really so angry with me that she doesn’t want to take care of me?” Again, the scene of the quarrel appeared in her mind. She remembered her rudeness to her mother, and she just realised that all the scolding from her mother was because her mother really cared a lot about her. Down rolled the tears.

*A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back.* She raised her head to see the familiar face and the worried eyes. “Here you come! I’ve been looking for you,” came the tired voice. Jenny couldn’t help hugging her mother tightly. “I’m sorry and thank you for all you have done for me.” She expressed her sincere apology and gratitude to her mother. Then she felt the hug tightened.

### 「学以致用」

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

There was a rich couple who was throwing a big new year party at their house. So they went shopping at the market where everything was of high cost and fixed price. They wanted to maintain their high living standards so they didn’t mind paying a lot for it. After purchasing everything they needed, they called a porter to carry everything and drop it off at their home. The porter who came was of an old age, not very healthy-looking. His clothes were torn and he looked as if he wasn’t even able to meet his daily needs.

They asked the porter about the charges for delivering their goods at their home. The old porter quoted just \$20, a price well below the market rate for delivering goods at the couple’s home in his cart. Yet the couple argued and bargained with the porter and finally settled for \$15. The porter was struggling to make money for every single meal so he needed anything he could earn.

The couple was very happy thinking how well they bargained with the poor porter and paid him

\$15 in advance and left after giving the porter their address for delivery. They reached their home and one hour passed, two hours passed, but the porter still hadn’t delivered their stuff.

The wife started to get angry at her husband, “I always tell you not to trust such a person but you never listen to me. Such a person is not even able to earn to feed himself for one time in a day, and you handed him everything we purchased for our big party. I am sure instead of delivering at our home, he must have disappeared with everything. We must immediately go back to the market to inquire and then to the police station to file the complaint against him.”

They both left towards the market. On their way, near the market, they saw another porter. They stopped him to inquire about the old porter and noticed that he was carrying their stuff in his cart!

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

参考范文:

*The angry wife asked him, “Where is that old thief? This is our stuff.”* The porter replied, “Madam, please calm down. That poor old man was sick since last month. He wasn’t able to earn enough to even have a single meal of the day. He was on the way to deliver your stuff, but he, who was hungry and sick, couldn’t gather the strength to go any further in this heat of the noon. He fell down and he handed me \$15. His last words were, ‘I had taken an advance for this delivery, you take this and please deliver it to this address.’”

*Upon hearing this, the husband had tears in his eyes and turned to his wife.* “He was hungry, he was poor, but he was an honest man,” the husband said. The wife felt quite ashamed that she was angry with her husband’s decision. She had no courage to look her husband in the eye. Suddenly it dawned on her that honesty has no class. Respect everyone regardless of their financial and social status. It’s always a good deed to give the one who deserves.

## 课后素养评价(二十)

### I. 单句语法填空

1. You ought to be ashamed of your foolish behaviour in front of so many people.
2. I was expecting him at ten, but he didn't turn up.
3. The company is fortunate (fortune) to have such highly skilled workers.
4. The surroundings (surround) in which a child grows up may have an effect on his/her development.
5. Do I need to go through my doctor to get an appointment (appoint)?
6. The importance of the town is due to its geographical location (locate).
7. Ordinarily (ordinary), I find this job easy, but today I'm having problems.
8. I think the company ought to do (do) something about the poor service.
9. Surprisingly, he has worked out a new way of solving the problem.
10. Nothing more was heard from him so that we began to wonder if he was dead.

### II. 完成句子

1. The Chinese film, set in the Tang Dynasty, is well received by many foreign film fans.  
这部以唐朝为背景的中国电影广受外国影迷的欢迎。
2. He drove so fast that the car disappeared in the distance right away.  
他开得如此快以至于汽车很快消失在远处。
3. We were anxious for the news of your safe arrival.  
我们都渴望知晓你安全到达的消息。
4. Your account of events does not correspond to/with hers.  
你对事情的陈述与她说的不相符。
5. The man lost his balance and fell down the stairs, having his legs injured.  
男子失去了平衡,从楼梯上摔了下来,弄伤了双腿。

### III. 语法填空

Friends play an important part in everyone's life. Friendship usually 1. develops (develop) during childhood.

Those friends that you make as a student can usually last long. Friends influence your development, maturity and sense of 2. responsibility (responsible). Friendship is based on common interests. If you like sports, most of your friends are likely to be athletic. If you enjoy 3. reading (read) and shopping, most of your friends do 4. the same.

Yet these days, the modern tools that keep us connected are eating away at the meaning of friendship. We may be able to make many friends online, but these 5. friends (friend) can be quite shallow. To make friends a real part of our lives, our smart phones should 6. be put (put) down. And we should meet our friends 7. in person.

True friends are difficult 8. to find (find). You can consider yourself very fortunate if you have one true friend. This friend is eager to help you whenever necessary. A true friend is someone you can talk to about any subject or problem 9. sincerely (sincere). A true friend is someone who walks in when the rest of the world walks out. A true friend is someone 10. who supports you when you are in trouble.

### IV. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你叫李华。最近,你的好友 Bob 来信说他升入高中以后感到不太适应,不知道如何结交新朋友。请你用英语给他回一封信,提出一些建议:

1. 与人接触时要面带微笑、对别人友好;
2. 关心同学、乐于助人;
3. 积极参加班级活动并展示自己的才能。

参考词汇:才能 talent

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。



## 参考范文:

Dear Bob,

I'm glad to receive your letter. From your letter, I know you have problems making new friends in high school. The following are my suggestions.

First, you should smile and try to be friendly when you meet people. That way, when people are with you, they will feel comfortable and happy. Second, you should also care about your schoolmates. If you are always ready to help them, they will understand you better. Finally, it is better for you to take an active part in class activities where you can show your talent.

I hope my advice will be helpful to you. May you be happy in your new school.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

During my school years, I had only one close friend. We spent years together, and we were inseparable, in or out of school. But then Greg moved away, and I never thought it would take more than 40 years to bring us together again.

As children, Greg and I dove into everything with passion. At that time, we were pure (纯真的) and kind, full of curiosity and expectation for life. We raced our bikes and illustrated (给书加插图) our own comic books. We even became attracted to the same girl from around the corner, a sixth-grader named Joanne who barely (几乎不) knew we existed.

The last time I saw Greg was sometime in 1966. It was so short a meeting that I couldn't recall saying goodbye before he moved. Since then, we lost touch.

But then, a few summers ago, I saw a familiar

woman. "Excuse me. Would your name happen to be Joanne?"

"Uh, yes..." She didn't recognise me until I explained who I was. We hadn't exchanged more than a few dozen words in our entire lifetime. "Have you stayed in touch with Greg?" She asked. I was surprised she even knew of our friendship.

"No. I haven't," I admitted. "I wish I had."

Back at the office I checked my messages. I glanced at one email, and then read it from start to finish. The email was from Greg.

Greg had tracked me down through social media. He was married, had two children and had become a musician and entrepreneur (企业家). We exchanged several emails before connecting by phone. A month later, my wife and I drove to meet Greg and his family in person.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

## 参考范文:

*Standing in front of his house, I began to get nervous. I didn't know what to say or do. So much time had passed and a lot of memories seemed to have been blurred. But after hugs and introductions, the years dissolved as we exchanged stories about our lives. I had brought along the only picture I could find containing the two of us from my sixth birthday. The picture is a witness to our friendship in the past.*

*Seeing the photo, Greg handed me a small, old card. It was written "Greg's invitation to my sixth birthday party", signed "From Donnie" in faded blue crayon. Although the card had turned yellow, it could be seen that he kept it carefully for many years. There were a few other things shared that evening, but none as meaningful as the invitation and the picture. They were stored apart but saved for the reunion of two old friends. True friendship does not fade with time.*

## 阶段综合提升(二)

## Unit 3—Unit 4

## I. 阅读理解

## A

Amsterdam is a special city. There are many places you should not miss during your visit. Here is our list of the best.

**Amsterdam Canal Ring**

The city old centre is formed from canal rings, which give you the feeling of space, freedom and peace. Walk through these canal streets or better take a trip by renting a boat yourself. Another way to explore the Venice of the North is to take a ride on a bicycle. Any way you decide for—enjoy this city.

**The National Maritime Museum**

The Maritime Museum is an attractive place to visit, especially with children. With many attractions in it, this colourful and enjoyable museum will help you understand the history of the Netherlands—a small nation which was one of the world's greatest sea powers.

**Amsterdam Brown Café**

When you enter Amsterdam old cafés called Brown, at first it will seem too much from the past and too crowded, but the atmosphere is unique. Relax and watch—most of people around will be locals. Feel like one of them—the real Amsterdammers.

**Civic Guards Gallery**

This gallery is filled with old paintings from the Dutch Golden Age. The exhibited canvas may be not always the masterpieces of art, but these group portraits of Amsterdam citizens and their wives are an exquisite (精致的) document of the Dutch civilisation and culture centuries ago.

To avoid waiting lines we advise you to buy your tickets in advance online through our Amsterdam attractions and museums tickets webpage.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了阿姆斯特丹几个值得参观的地方。

- How many ways are there for tourists to visit the city old centre?  
A. 2. B. 3.  
C. 4. D. 5.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Amsterdam Canal Ring** 中的“Walk through these canal streets or better take a trip by renting a boat yourself. Another way to explore the Venice of the North is to take a ride on a bicycle.”可知,本文为游客介绍了三种参观城市旧中心的方式。故选 B。

- Where would you go to learn more about local life?  
A. Amsterdam Canal Ring.  
B. The National Maritime Museum.  
C. Amsterdam Brown Café.  
D. Civic Guards Gallery.

C 推理判断题。根据 **Amsterdam Brown Café** 中的“When you enter Amsterdam old cafés called Brown, at first it will seem too much from the past and too crowded, but the atmosphere is unique. Relax and watch—most of people around will be locals.”可知,Amsterdam Brown Café 非常独特,并且有许多当地的人,游客可以去那里了解更多关于当地的生活。故选 C。

- Where does the passage probably come from?  
A. A travel guide.  
B. A novel.  
C. A textbook.  
D. A science magazine.

A 文章出处题。通读全文可知,本文介绍了阿姆斯特丹几处美丽的景点,所以本文很可能来自一本旅游向导。故选 A。

## B

When my son first began competing in school chess tournaments, I often chatted with other parents. Occasionally, I would ask if they played chess themselves. Normally, the reply was no. When I volunteered that I was learning to play, their tone was cheerfully joking, “Good luck with that!” If this game is so good, why are adults ignoring it? Seeing someone playing smartphone games, I preferred to say, “Why are you having your kids do chess while you play?”

Sure, we parents had work to do, work that helped pay for the lessons our kids were enjoying. But I was also wondering if we were sending an unnoticeable message that learning was for the young. During one tournament, I saw a group of

parents playing chess! Just then, a group of kids passed me. “Why are adults learning chess?” one asked, in an apparently joking tone.

I was tired of sitting on the sidelines. I wanted in, and that is why I got a membership card and started throwing myself in. “Early on, I was nervous, even the master can sometimes play badly,” as one grandmaster put it “a fan never”. And a fan I was. It was three hours of concentration and thinking with my phone off. It felt like a gym where I was trained to solve problems with focus, memory, logic, and occasional headaches. And of course hours of absence of digital devices would never be no good for thinking sharply.

Being a beginner can be hard at any age, but it gets harder when you are older. The phrase “adult beginner” has an fairly gentle pity. It implies the learning of something that you should have perhaps already learned.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者通过和其他家长聊国际象棋得到启发,下决心学下国际象棋并使自己的大脑得到锻炼的故事。

4. What can we learn about other parents from their remarks?
  - A. They were ignoring other learners.
  - B. They agreed on the idea of learning chess.
  - C. They thought it odd for an adult to learn chess.
  - D. They gave congratulations to the adult lessons.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“‘When I volunteered that I was learning to play, their tone was cheerfully joking, ‘Good luck with that!’ If this game is so good, why are adults ignoring it?’”可知,这些家长开玩笑是觉得成年人学国际象棋很奇怪。故选 C。
5. How did the child in the second paragraph perceive adults learning chess?
  - A. Laughable.
  - B. Unimaginable.
  - C. Understandable.
  - D. Sensible.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Just then, a group of kids passed me. ‘Why are adults learning chess?’ one asked, in an apparently joking tone.”可知,孩子们是在开玩笑,由此可以推出,孩子们认为成年人学国际象棋这件事情很可笑。故选 A。
6. What do the underlined words “sitting on the sidelines” mean in Paragraph 3?
  - A. Not being noticed.
  - B. Not being involved.
  - C. Expressing confusing ideas.
  - D. Following what others do.

B 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的“I wanted in, and that is why I got a membership card and started throwing myself in.”可知,作者想学习国际象棋,并加入到学习国际象棋的队伍当中。跟前文的 tired of“厌倦”形成对比。由此推测出,作者应该是厌倦了坐在旁边看着大家下国际象棋的生活,想要加入进去。B 项“不参与其中”符合句意。故选 B。
7. What did the writer think of his experience of learning to play chess?
  - A. It helped him remain calm.
  - B. It helped him train his brain.
  - C. It made him proud of himself.
  - D. It made him look rather funny.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“‘It felt like a gym where I was trained to solve problems with focus, memory, logic, and occasional headaches.’”可知,下国际象棋就像是把自己的脑子带去健身房接受训练来解决问题。故选 B。

### C

It was a large fish market northwest of Mumbai. Shark fins were sent onto tables. Tens of millions of sharks are killed for the fin trade every year, and a quarter of the world’s sharks, rays, and ghost sharks are in danger. The international trade in many species is not allowed, but it can be nearly impossible for wildlife officials to tell whether the fins here are from protected species.

The samples could be sent to a lab for DNA testing, but the test would take a full day. But Shaili Johri, a post doctoral biology researcher at San Diego State University, had a handheld device, or tool, that can say what species a part belongs to in a short time, using only a small tissue (组织) sample. The gene sequencing (基因序列测定) done by the MinION device, which she was testing out at the fish market, is a promising new tool to help fight the illegal shark fin trade.

Johri with another author recently published a study in the journal *Scientific Reports* explaining the first use of the new device for keeping sharks and other wild animals safe from attacks. The smartphone-sized device is made by UK-based Oxford Nanopore Technologies. It has been used for

the recognition of Ebola virus, among others. It is also likely to help prevent wildlife crime.

It requires a small tissue sample and a laptop. It can tell a species in three or four hours. But it has one downside: the tool costs \$1,000, including two original cartridges (测试盒). Every following sequencing cartridge, which can do 12 samples at once, costs an extra \$500. That's roughly \$42 per sample. The traditional DNA analysis method costs as little as \$5 a sample.

Hollie Booth, a sharks and rays advisor, says the MinION could have lots of practical uses, including controlling wildlife trade across countries or illegal fishing in markets. And the possibilities of this device aren't just limited to sharks. These tools could be used to recognise elephant ivory, pangolin scales, and various other wildlife.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了基因测序仪可以用于基因测序,打击非法鱼翅交易,还可以用来保护其他野生动物。

8. What did Johri use the MinION for at the fish market?

- A. Collecting tissue from endangered fish.
- B. Discovering sharks' gene sequences.
- C. Recognising the species of a shark.
- D. Saving sharks from losing their fins.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*But Shaili Johri, a post doctoral biology researcher at San Diego State University, had a handheld device, or tool, that can say what species a part belongs to in a short time, using only a small tissue (组织) sample.*”可知,Johri 在鱼市上使用 MinION 辨别鲨鱼种类。故选 C。

9. What does the new study mainly tell us about the MinION?

- A. How it can help reduce wildlife crime.
- B. Its use for wildlife protection purposes.
- C. How it was developed by a UK company.
- D. Its influence on different scientific fields.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*Johri with another author recently published a study in the journal *Scientific Reports* explaining the first use of the new device for keeping sharks and other wild animals safe from attacks.*”可知,这项新的研究主要介绍了使用 MinION 这种新装置的目的是保护野生动物。故选 B。

10. What is a disadvantage of the MinION?

- A. It makes mistakes at times.

B. It requires more time.

C. It is hard to use.

D. It is expensive.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*But it has one downside: the tool costs \$1,000, including two original cartridges (测试盒). Every following sequencing cartridge, which can do 12 samples at once, costs an extra \$500. That's roughly \$42 per sample. The traditional DNA analysis method costs as little as \$5 a sample.*”可知,MinION 的缺点是价格高。故选 D。

11. What does Booth probably think of the MinION?

- A. It will save many kinds of animals.
- B. It should be used after further research.
- C. It must make technological improvements.
- D. It needs more support from wildlife officials.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*Hollie Booth, a sharks and rays advisor, says the MinION could have lots of practical uses, including controlling wildlife trade across countries or illegal fishing in markets. And the possibilities of this device aren't just limited to sharks.*”可知,Booth 认为 MinION 能够拯救许多种类的动物。故选 A。

#### D

To make artificial intelligence that can reason and apply knowledge flexibly, many researchers are focused on fresh ideas from neuroscience (神经科学). Should they be looking to psychology too? Researchers are working to develop new AI systems that can figure out simple abstract relations between objects and the reason behind them as effortlessly as a human brain.

Artificial intelligence has come a long way. In recent years, smart machines inspired by the human brain have shown superhuman abilities in games like chess and Go, proved remarkably expert at imitating some of our language skills. But with various other aspects of what we might reasonably call human intelligence—reasoning, understanding causality (因果关系), applying knowledge flexibly, to name a few—AI still struggles. They are also inefficient learners, requiring large amounts of data where humans need only a few examples.

Some researchers think all we need to bridge the gap is ever larger AI, while others want to turn back to nature's blueprint. One path is to double down on efforts to copy the brain, better replicating

(复制) the intricacies of real brain cells and the ways their activity is arranged. But the brain is the most complex object in the known universe and it is far from clear how much of its complexity we need to replicate to reproduce its capabilities.

That's why some believe more abstract ideas about how intelligence works can provide shortcuts. Their claim is that to really accelerate the progress of AI towards something that we can say thinks like a human, we need to imitate not the brain—but the mind. “In some sense, they're just different ways of looking at the same thing, but sometimes it's profitable to do that,” says Gary Marcus at New York University and start-up Robust AI. “You don't want a replica, what you want is to learn the principles that allow the brain to be as effective as it is.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要讨论了如何让人工智能更加智能化,让它可以像人类的大脑一样思考。

12. What do we know about the current AI?
- They are good at reasoning.
  - They have amazing learning ability.
  - They can't understand complex information.
  - They lack some elements of real intelligence.
- D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*But with various other aspects of what we might reasonably call human intelligence—reasoning, understanding causality (因果关系), applying knowledge flexibly, to name a few—AI still struggles.*”可知,目前的AI在推理、理解因果关系和灵活运用知识等方面还很困难,所以它们缺乏人类真正智慧的一些关键要素。故选D。
13. What can we infer from Paragraph 3?
- People fail to understand the complexity of the brain.
  - Scientists need to focus on the structure of the brain.
  - The attempt to copy the brain might be unrealistic.
  - Scientists are doubtful about the future of AI.
- C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“*But the brain is the most complex object in the known universe and it is far from clear how much of its complexity we need to replicate to reproduce its capabilities.*”可知,人脑是目前宇宙中最复杂的事物,我们远不清楚我们要多么精细地复制大脑才能复制大脑的能力,所以复制大脑是不现实的。故选C。

14. What does Gary Marcus suggest researchers do to advance AI?

- Make AI more creative.
- Teach more principles to AI.
- Study how intelligence works.
- Update their knowledge constantly.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*You don't want a replica, what you want is to learn the principles that allow the brain to be as effective as it is.*”可知,Gary Marcus认为我们并不需要一个大脑的复制品,而是需要了解大脑产生智能的原理。故选C。

15. What is a suitable title for the text?

- Are the Smart Machines Intelligent Enough?
- Make Machine Minds That Really Think like Us
- What to Expect with the Future of AI Technology
- The Future of AI? Psychology May Provide Fresh Ideas

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段最后一句“*Researchers are working to develop new AI systems that can figure out simple abstract relations between objects and the reason behind them as effortlessly as a human brain.*”可知,文章主要讨论了如何才能让AI可以像人类的大脑一样思考。故选B。

## II. 七选五

How can teenagers keep themselves from suffering from loneliness? Here are some suggestions for speeding a recovery from loneliness.

**16** A smile and a friendly greeting for the student behind you in line at the cafeteria (自助餐厅) won't make you best friends. But it will make you both feel good. It can also make it easier to interact the next time, and the time after that.

Find a safe place to make connections. If going to the dancing party makes you feel like you just don't belong, try joining a special-interest group.

**17** Just because you feel left out in one group doesn't mean you'll feel like an outsider in every other one. Look for a group that allows you to feel comfortable gradually.

Find other ways of making connections. Lonely people hunger for friendship. Sometimes feeling accepted and liked comes more easily when you do something for others rather than wait for them to

make you feel better. 18 Teach a child in reading. Take notes for a disabled classmate. You might be surprised at the connections you make.

19 Loneliness is an absence of quality friendship, not of a particular quantity of friends. That's why it's important to know how to select a friend. The best friendships are those based on similar values and attitudes.

You get what you expect, so expect the best. If you expect others to be friendly, you will behave in proper ways that encourage people to be friendlier to you. Loneliness won't last long. 20

- A. Choose the right people.  
B. So consider becoming a volunteer.  
C. Reach out to others but start small.  
D. It can be hard work to be positive towards others.  
E. Maybe it's the drama club or the marching band.  
F. This harmful attitude can continue into adulthood.  
G. But starting the first step of positive expectations can make all the difference.

答案: 16~20 CEBAG

### III. 完形填空

After two years of online learning, I started middle school in person a few weeks ago. Since there was a big gap of online school, the middle school decided to give 21 lunches to all students.

Of course, you could 22 whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal. I took something from 23, while some of my friends had 24 from school. No matter if you had lunch from home or school, everyone knew that the school's juices that came with the lunch were 25.

Almost half the 26 school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me. Today, like every day at lunch, my friends and I were 27 in line to get our juices. When we got to the front of the line and 28 the juices, the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents.

We were 29 because we had gotten juices many times before this. 30 this I ran to my backpack to get some 31. I thought my friends would do the same, but they were just 32 there looking disappointed. I asked them what happened

and they said none of them had any money.

As I looked at their faces, something in me 33. I felt like it was my 34 to get them the juices.

I immediately ran back to the lunch line and 35 the juices. When I returned to them with the juices, they were so happy. The feeling I felt there at that moment was better than any juice.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者为朋友们掏钱买果汁的暖心故事。

21. A. big B. free  
C. small D. fresh  
B 根据下文的“the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents”以及“I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money.”可推知,此处指学校的餐食原来是免费的,所以学生们跟往常一样前去打饭时才没有带钱。故选B。
22. A. refuse B. doubt  
C. realise D. choose  
D 根据下文的“whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal”可推知,此处指学生可以在从家里带饭和吃学校的饭之间做选择。故选D。
23. A. home B. tables  
C. stores D. restaurants  
A 根据上文的“you could 22 whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal”以及下文的“while some of my friends had 24 from school”可推知,此处指作者的一些朋友在学校吃饭,而作者从家里带饭。故选A。
24. A. breakfast B. tea  
C. lunch D. supper  
C 根据下文的“No matter if you had lunch from home or school”可推知,此处指作者的一些朋友在学校吃午餐。故选C。
25. A. terrible B. salty  
C. hot D. amazing  
D 根据下文的“Almost half the 26 school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me.”可推知,此处指学校的果汁味道不错,很多学生都喜欢。故选D。
26. A. quiet B. entire  
C. active D. crowded



B 根据上文的“everyone knew that the school’s juices that came with the lunch were 25”以及空前“Almost half the”和空后的“school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me”可推知,此处指果汁的味道很棒,几乎全校一半的人喝学校的果汁。故选 B。

27. A. waiting B. walking  
C. talking D. leaving

A 根据空后的“in line to get our juices”可推知,此处指作者和朋友们排队等待着领取果汁。故选 A。

28. A. accepted B. bought  
C. asked for D. handed in

C 根据上文的“my friends and I were 27 in line to get our juices”以及空前的“we got to the front of the line”可推知,此处指作者与朋友们排队到柜台前面是为了要领取果汁。故选 C。

29. A. worried B. surprised  
C. excited D. concerned

B 根据上文的“the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents”可推知,果汁原来是免费的,现在变成了收费的,所以作者和朋友们应该很惊讶。故选 B。

30. A. Forgetting B. Ignoring  
C. Abandoning D. Hearing

D 根据上文收银员的话以及空后的“I ran to my backpack”可推知,此处指作者听到果汁收费后的动作。故选 D。

31. A. money B. paper  
C. food D. medicine

A 根据上文的“each juice is seventy-five cents”和“30 this I ran to my backpack”以及下文“they said none of them had any money”可推知,此处指作者听到果汁要收费的消息后立马跑回去拿钱。故选 A。

32. A. moving B. standing  
C. reading D. reflecting

B 根据下文的“looking disappointed. I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money”可推知,此处指作者的朋友们因为没钱,所以很失望地站在原地,没有其他动作。故选 B。

33. A. ran off B. started out  
C. moved away D. kicked in

D 根据下文的“I felt like it was my 34 to get them the juices.”可推知,此处指作者看到朋友们的表现后,头脑中产生了某种想法。故选 D。

34. A. duty B. plan  
C. wish D. decision

A 根据上文的“something in me 33”以及空后的“to get them the juices”和下文的“The feeling I felt there at that moment was better than any juice.”可推知,此处指作者认为朋友们买果汁是自己的使命。故选 A。

35. A. got B. missed  
C. paid for D. looked for

C 根据下文的“When I returned to them with the juices”可推知,此处指作者支付了果汁的钱,为朋友们买了果汁。故选 C。

#### IV. 语法填空

Chess is a game of make-believe kings and queens, pawns (卒) and rooks (车). For 12-year-old Andre, chess is more 36. than just a game.

He uses what he learned on the chessboard in real life, like, think before you move. He’s just one of the students from some of Los Angeles’s toughest neighbourhoods 37. learning (learn) to play.

Damen Fletcher, 38. who learned how to play chess at age 13, grew up in Compton. After leaving the city 39. to attend (attend) college, he came home to find his 40. childhood (child) friends struggling.

“Some of 41. them (they) had even fallen into prison (牢狱). I just wondered, ‘Why did I have such a different result?’ And it was chess,” he said.

He started Train of Thought to help kids of all 42. ages (age) find their inner king or queen.

“Every game of chess is 75 to 100 moves, and every single move that your opponent (对手) makes presents 43. a new problem for you to solve,” he said.

So, how does Fletcher teach a 5-year-old how to play chess?

“We have a really 44. interesting (interest) story that we use to help kids that age set up a chessboard for the first time,” Fletcher said. “It goes: the king and the queen got married. They 45. rode (ride) on horses to their castle (城堡) and had eight children.”

#### V. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

假设你是李华,是英美文学爱好者。最近,你在学习英语诗歌时,遇到一些困难。请给你校的外教琼斯先生写一封求助信。内容包括:

1. 发出求助;
2. 陈述你的问题;
3. 希望他提供帮助。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考范文:

Dear Mr Jones,

I'm Li Hua, a student in English and American Literature Class. I'm writing to ask you for some help.

Actually I am a fan of English and American literature, so I like your class very much. Unfortunately, I have met some difficulty in learning English poetry recently. For example, there are so many new words in the poems that it is difficult for me to understand them. What's more, I cannot find exact Chinese for some poems. Would you be so kind as to offer some advice on how to learn English poetry?

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,  
Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Waking up, I looked at the overcast sky, thought a bit and then decided to go to work after all. This was two years ago, when I worked at a bank. As I travelled from my house, it kept raining. I reached the office quite smoothly, but a few hours later, our phones started buzzing with news of flooding in various parts of the city.

Looking out of the window, my colleagues and I found that the steady drizzle had grown into a downpour. We got a bit nervous, since none of us in the city have forgotten the city's worst floods a decade ago.

At about 12:30 pm, after an alert from the city government, the bank let the staff leave early. Some colleagues, who had already left, called to say that they were stranded (滞留). The train services had been blocked and there were not other means of transportation available either. A senior colleague, who happened to live in the same district, offered

me a lift in his car. I agreed happily, and so did other colleagues, since it would have been crazy to walk into the driving rain.

The rain poured down continuously, with waist-high flood soon on the road. In the midway, the rainwater reached our car's engine. We had no option but to park nearby. The only dry place we found was under a giant tree. We also spotted a tea stall nearby and got ourselves some much-needed tea and refreshments.

All along, I got anxious phone calls from my wife and parents, who were tracking the flood situation on TV. We looked up weather updates on our mobile phones and got more and more tense—home seemed far away. If it had not been for my portable (便携的) power bank, all our phones would have been dead.

Our train of thoughts was suddenly interrupted by a raised voice. We looked up and found a lady calling out from the balcony of a building behind us. "Please come in and make yourselves comfortable. How long will you stand out there?" she shouted out. We thanked her, but continued to wait.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

参考范文:

After half an hour or so, I felt a touch on my shoulder. A lady living nearby came with her brother. They persuaded us to follow them. We were pleased to meet the Bhosale family. Grateful for everything, we assured them that we would leave as soon as the waters receded. However, the family insisted that we have dinner that was being cooked for us. Much to our surprise, we met around 12 other people, who had been accommodated just like we were.

We didn't want further favours, but the family seemed to sense our must to spend the night. Despite our hesitation, they brought in carpets and mats, spread them out and asked us to make ourselves comfortable. We were simply touched by their kindness. At about 4 am, the flood waters finally started to recede. Extremely relieved at this, we started heading out. Not wanting to disturb our sleeping hosts, we quietly slipped a thank-you note under their door and left.

## 读后续写技能养成

## 人物描写之对话描写

## 「技能概述」

1. 对话描写:是指通过直接引用两个或两个以上的人之间的谈话来刻画人物的性格或心理的一种写作手法,它包括单人、双人或多人对话。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,需要注意对话描写①必须为推动故事情节服务,每段出现一两句即可;②必须能反映人物的心理与情感,刻画人物的性格;③侧重口语化词汇,避开生僻词汇,而且不宜过长;④要有画面感,尽量结合动作描写,明确对谁说。

## 「范例体悟」

When I opened my eyes at last, it was to a red-and-blue shirt. “You’re awake!” said an unfamiliar voice. It was Rough Lock, and I understood it was he who had saved me. “Thank you, Rough Lock!” I said, tears in my eyes. Kenji stuck his head out from behind Rough Lock and mumbled, “I’m sorry that I played a prank on you. I promise I will never do that again. We’re still friends, aren’t we?” I nodded, forcing a weak smile.

用不同的线标出人物对话,并写下引述词。

人物对话:(在原文中已用不同的线标出)

对话引述词:said; mumbled

## 「词句储备」

## I. 好词积累

## (一)引述词:

say, ask, answer, beg(请求), call, cry, shout(大喊), yell(喊叫), explain, apologise, reply(回答), suggest, advise, whisper(小声说), scream(尖叫), utter(说), scold(斥责), sigh(叹息说), think, complain(抱怨), announce(宣布), add(补充说), continue(继续说), repeat(重复说), demand(要求), declare(声明), remark(说), admit(承认), agree, gasp(气喘吁吁地说)等。

## (二)对话中加入表示情感或嗓音的词汇:

- ① in a pleasant(愉悦的)/firm(坚定的)/rude(粗鲁的)/sad(悲伤的) tone;
- ② in a high(高的)/low(低的)/sweet(甜润的)/loud(响亮的)/soft(轻柔的)/weak(虚弱的) voice;
- ③ with embarrassment(尴尬地)/excitement(激动地)/anger/fury(愤怒地)等;
- ④ firmly(坚定地), happily, sadly, desperately(绝望地)等。

## II. 佳句背诵

1. (2022·新高考I卷续写) At that moment, David’s classmates approached him and said, “Let’s run together.”  
就在那时,大卫的同学走近他说:“我们一起跑吧。”
2. (2022·新高考I卷续写) “Come on, you can do it,” I whispered to him in a soft voice.  
“加油,你能做到的,”我轻声对他说。
3. “I will never do that again,” I answered firmly.  
“我再也不会那样做了,”我坚定地回答。
4. “I didn’t mean to,” she murmured in a low voice.  
“我不是故意的,”她低声说。
5. “How much do we still need to pay for a new truck?” asked my mother.  
“我们买一辆新卡车还需要付多少钱?”母亲问。

## 「技能达标」

## I. 完成句子

1. I asked him, “Why not run?”  
我问他:“为什么不跑呢?”
2. “What a brave boy!” I sighed and hugged him tightly with teary eyes.  
“多么勇敢的孩子啊!”我叹了口气,热泪盈眶地紧紧抱住他。
3. “I would love to,” said Emily in a pleasant tone.  
“我很乐意这样做,”埃米莉用一种愉快的语气说。
4. I ran to him and shouted, “Get up and run!”  
我跑向他,喊道:“起来,快跑!”
5. They hugged her and yelled, “Happy Mother’s Day, darling Mummy!”  
他们抱着她大喊:“亲爱的妈妈,母亲节快乐!”

## II. 用人物对话描写完成下面的语段

Years afterwards Hiram learned that what he had thought was a diamond was only a bit of glass.

1. “Did you know it then, Mother?” he asked. (“你那时知道吗,妈妈?”他问。) His mother nodded. “And you never told me.”
2. “It was brighter to me than any real diamond,” she said. (“在我看来,它比任何真正的钻石都要亮,”她说。)

“The brightness I saw flashing in it was the unselfish love of my boy.” Indeed, nothing in the world is more precious than a sincere heart.

Unit 5 Into the wild

人与自然——人类与动物的关系

必背 单词	charity, whale, annual, seek, measure, position, determine, eventually, solution, amazing, crash, per cent, destroy, creature, survive, effect, authority, source, found, button, recover, shock, element, encounter, variety, path, concentrate, freeze, stare, image, reaction, file
重点 表达	manage to do, the solution to, human activity, be famous for, cut down, brave the elements, at a speed of, concentrate on, recover from, show respect to, after all
重点 知识	1. the+比较级..., the+比较级... 2. 强调句型
单元 语法	关系副词引导的定语从句
单元 写作	描写一种动物
主题 美文 赏读	<p>Nobody before Jane fully understood chimp behaviour. She spent years observing and recording their daily activities. Since her childhood she had wanted to work with animals in their own environment. However, this was not easy. When she first arrived in Gombe in 1960, it was unusual for a woman to live in the forest. Only after her mother came to help her for the first few months was she allowed to begin her project. Her work changed the way people think about chimps. For example, one important thing she discovered was that chimps hunt and eat meat. Until then everyone had thought chimps ate only fruit and nuts. She actually observed chimps as a group hunting a monkey and then eating it. She also discovered how chimps communicate with each other, and her study of their body language helped her work out their social system.</p> <p>在 Jane 之前没有人完全了解黑猩猩的行为。她花了数年时间观察和记录它们的日常活动。从童年起,她就想在动物生活的环境中研究它们。然而,这并不容易。1960 年,当她第一次来到贡贝时,一个女人住在森林里是不寻常的。最初的几个月她母亲来帮助她,她才被允许开始她的项目。她的工作改变了人们对黑猩猩的看法。例如,她发现的一件重要的事情是黑猩猩捕猎和吃肉。在那之前,每个人都认为黑猩猩只吃水果和坚果。她亲眼看到黑猩猩成群猎食一只猴子,然后吃掉它。她还发现了黑猩猩是如何相互交流的,而且她对它们肢体语言的研究帮助她弄清了它们的社会体系。</p>

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

- 1. charity *n.* 慈善机构,慈善团体
- 2. annual *adj.* 一年一度的,每年的
- 3. seek *v.* 寻找,寻求
- 4. professor *n.* 教授
- 5. measure *v.* 量,测量
- 6. position *n.* 位置
- 7. determine *v.* 测定,确定
- 8. eventually *adv.* 终于,最终
- 9. solution *n.* 解决,解决方法
- 10. amazing *adj.* 惊人的,了不起的
- 11. per cent *n.* 百分比
- 12. destroy *v.* 破坏,毁掉
- 13. creature *n.* 生物,动物
- 14. survive *v.* 活下来,幸存
- 15. effect *n.* 影响,结果

- 16. manage to do 设法做成
- 17. the solution to ……的解决方法
- 18. cut down 砍倒(树木);削减,减少使用

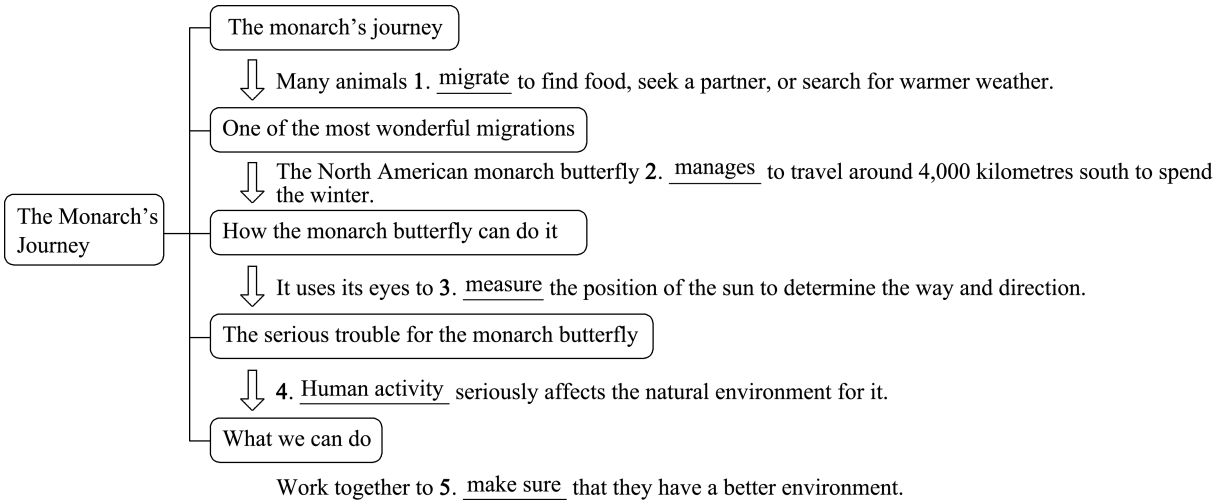
(二)阅读词汇

- 1. monarch *n.* 君主,国王
- 2. Atlantic *adj.* 大西洋的
- 3. whale *n.* 鲸
- 4. migration *n.* 迁徙
- 5. migrate *v.* 移栖,迁徙
- 6. mystery *n.* 难以理解的事物,谜
- 7. crash *v.* 暴跌
- 8. chemical *n.* 化学品
- 9. caterpillar *n.* 毛虫(蝴蝶等昆虫的幼虫)
- 10. monarch butterfly 黑脉金斑蝶
- 11. flow chart 流程图,作业图
- 12. human activity 人类活动

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



## ▶ 文本细节领悟

**Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text**

- Why does the monarch butterfly migrate every autumn?  
A. To find a partner.  
B. To spend the winter.  
C. To tell the time of day.  
D. To measure the position of the sun.

答案: B

- What does the word “crashed” in Paragraph 4 mean?  
A. Succeeded.                      B. Failed.  
C. Increased.                      D. Dropped.

答案: D

- Which section is this article likely to appear in the newspaper?  
A. Sports.                      B. Health.  
C. Hobby.                      D. Wildlife.

答案: D

## ▶ 语言知识运用

**Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text**

Every autumn, millions of the North American monarch butterflies manage **1. to travel** (travel) around 4,000 kilometres south and find their way to places **2. where** they will spend the winter.

A team of scientists **3. led** (lead) by Professor Eli Shlizerman at the University of Washington has discovered that the monarch is able to tell the time of day and then uses **4. its** (it) eyes to measure the position of the sun. These two **5. pieces** (piece) of information allow the butterfly to determine which way it needs to go.

The monarch's population **6. has crashed** (crash) by as much as ninety per cent in the last few years. **7. Sadly** (sad), human activity is the main reason why **8. the** number of the North American monarch butterflies is falling.

The research on the monarch's behaviour has

however led **9. to** a greater awareness of this creature. The more we know about this lovely creature, the **10. greater** (great) the chance it will survive.

**Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them**

- If this works, there may come a time when the number of monarch butterflies increases once again.

[句子分析]句中 If this works 是条件状语从句,主句中含有 when 引导的定语从句。

[尝试翻译]如果这些努力产生效果,黑脉金斑蝶的数量在未来有可能再次回升。

- The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.

[句子分析]此句是“the+比较级, the+比较级”结构。其中 chance 后是一个省略了 that 的同位语从句,用来解释说明 chance 的内容。

[尝试翻译]我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

## ▶ 思维品质培养

**Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions**

- What animals do you know are on the edge of extinction? And why?

Pandas, South China Tigers and so on. Because there are both natural factors and human activity, but the latter is the most important.

- What can we do in our daily life in protecting endangered animals?

We should organise more activities or attend more activities to attract people's attention to them. Only when all the people raise the awareness can animals be protected.



课后素养评价(二十一)

I. 阅读理解

The beautiful monarch butterfly is facing an unprecedented (前所未有的) decline and Utah State University (USU) wants to make sure that doesn't happen.

To help the struggling butterfly, USU students have been capturing and tagging (给……贴标签) monarch butterflies in the Uintah Basin.

Tagging butterflies will allow researchers to know their migration path and protect their feeding grounds. Every year, monarch butterflies start “3,000-mile migration, travelling south to Mexico each fall and back up Canada in the spring”, according to the National Wildlife Federation (NWF).

Because of habitat loss and increased pesticide (杀虫剂) use, monarch butterflies have experienced a population decline upwards of 90%, according to NWF.

“Monarch butterflies are facing a large historical decline over the last 40 years,” says USU senior Carson Liesik, a student on the project. “The population, as of the beginning of 2020, was about 30,000 monarchs in the Western United States, which is about a 99% drop as compared to information from the 1980s. We are hoping to learn how to help the monarch butterfly population recover from its historical decline. This project is an important step.”

When tagging the butterflies, students record information about each one including its wing condition and location of discovery. Then students map the migration path as well as habitat use and activity. They tag each butterfly with unique number so that if it is recaptured at a later date, they can know the growth stage. With the collected information,

students get an idea of where these monarch butterflies are and how they are using the resources around them.

Researchers say the public can help protect the monarch butterfly population, too. “The best way is by growing milkweed plants wherever you may have space. Milkweed is the main food source that monarch butterflies depend on. If you plant milkweed in your yard, you might be lucky enough to see monarchs stop and breed (繁殖),” says the Utah Division of Wildlife Resources (UDWR).

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲的是在过去的40年里,黑脉金斑蝶的数量面临着历史上的大幅度下降,所以为了帮助处于困境中的蝴蝶,Utah State University 的学生们一直在 Uintah 盆地捕捉和标记黑脉金斑蝶。

1. Why do the students mark monarch butterflies?
- A. To study their migration path.
  - B. To research their social behaviour.
  - C. To find the difference in their feeding habits.
  - D. To know the number of them in both Mexico and Canada.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Tagging butterflies will allow researchers to know their migration path and protect their feeding grounds.”可知,学生给黑脉金斑蝶作标记是为了研究它们的迁徙路线。故选 A。

2. What does Liesik want to tell us about monarch butterflies in Paragraph 5?
- A. They were first discovered in the 1980s.
  - B. They are facing serious survival problems.
  - C. They have been well protected since 2020.
  - D. They changed the way researchers think about butterflies.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“‘Monarch

butterflies are facing a large historical decline over the last 40 years,’ says USU senior Carson Liesik, a student on the project. ‘The population, as of the beginning of 2020, was about 30,000 monarchs in the Western United States, which is about a 99% drop as compared to information from the 1980s.’”可知,在过去的 40 年里黑脉金斑蝶数量严重下降,所以 Carson Liesik 想要告诉我们的是黑脉金斑蝶正面临着严重的生存问题。故选 B。

3. What is Paragraph 6 mainly about?

- A. The results of the project.
- B. The importance of the project.
- C. How USU supports the project.
- D. How the students carry out the project.

D 段落大意题。根据第六段的内容可知,该段主要讲的是学生们是如何实施该项目的。故选 D。

4. How can the public best protect monarch butterflies according to UDWR?

- A. By stopping the use of farm chemicals.
- B. By making their yards clean and open.
- C. By planting milkweed in their yards.
- D. By raising money for NWF.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“‘The best way is by growing milkweed plants wherever you may have space. Milkweed is the main food source that monarch butterflies depend on. If you plant milkweed in your yard, you might be lucky enough to see monarchs stop and breed (繁殖),’ says the Utah Division of Wildlife Resources (UDWR).”可知,因为马利筋是黑脉金斑蝶的主要食物来源,所以在 UDWR 看来公众可以通过种植马利筋来保护黑脉金斑蝶。故选 C。

II. 七选五

**Should We Build More National Parks to Save Endangered Animals?**

Don't you find it worrying that more and more

species of animals are in real danger of becoming extinct? 1 And I think the best way to do this for governments is to create more national parks.

2 If this environment is destroyed—for example, when farmers clear a forest for new fields, or trees are cut down to make profits—many animals are unable to survive, and more species are likely to become extinct.

In addition, national parks protect animals from the danger of being hunted. A major reason why many species are endangered is that these animals are killed by hunters. They hunt animals to make money. 3

On the other hand, some people fight against the foundation of national parks because they consider it is wrong to interfere with nature. They believe that wild animals are happier living in their natural environment. 4 They also point out that a few species are more likely to produce young animals in the wild than in national parks.

All in all, these disadvantages are far less important than the benefits of national parks. 5 As a matter of fact, they protect animals from their greatest enemies, that is, human beings.

- A. To begin with, animals are important to humans.
- B. Some hunters even hunt animals simply for sport.
- C. I personally believe that we must save these animals.
- D. These parks allow animals to live in a safe environment.
- E. Firstly, national parks protect these animals' natural environment.
- F. They say though the animals may face danger, they enjoy a free life.
- G. There is a heated discussion about whether to build more national parks.

答案:1~5 CEBFD

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **charity** aims to provide assistance to people in need. 慈善机构,慈善团体
2. They **sought** for a place to shelter from the rain, but in vain. 寻找,寻求
3. I've found our **position** on the map if you want to see where we are. 位置
4. The first living **creature** sent into space was a dog named Laika. 生物,动物
5. **Whales** are one of the biggest animals in the world. 鲸
6. Most college **professors** agree the kind of exam they choose largely depends on the subject. 教授
7. Many companies suffer great loss, because the stock market **crashed**. 暴跌
8. According to the study, fifty **per cent** of road accidents result in head injuries. 百分比

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>migrate</u> v. 移栖,迁徙	<u>migration</u> n. 迁徙
	migrant n. 移民
<u>determine</u> v. 测定,确定	determined adj. 坚决的,下定决心的
	determination n. 决心;(正式)决定,确定
<u>solution</u> n. 解决,解决方法	solve v. 解决,处理
<u>mystery</u> n. 难以理解的事物,谜	mysterious adj. 神秘的,不易解释的
<u>amazing</u> adj. 惊人的,了不起的	amaze v. 使吃惊
	amazed adj. 吃惊的,惊讶的
	amazement n. 惊奇;惊诧
<u>survive</u> v. 活下来,幸存	survival n. 幸存
	survivor n. 幸存者

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>effect</u> n. 影响,结果	effective adj. 有效的;实际的
<u>measure</u> v. 量,测量	measurement n. 测量,计量,衡量
<u>chemical</u> n. 化学品	chemistry n. 化学;化学组成
	chemist n. 化学家;药剂师;药房

III. 补全短语

1. manage to do sth. 设法做成某事
2. the solution to .....的解决方法
3. be in trouble 处于困境,惹了麻烦
4. the number of .....的数量
5. cut down 砍倒(树木);削减,减少使用

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:不定式作目的状语  
They migrate to find food, seek a partner, or in search of warmer weather.  
它们为了觅食、寻找伴侣或更温暖的环境而迁徙。
2. 句型公式:过去分词短语作定语  
A team of scientists led by Professor Eli Shlizerman at the University of Washington has now found the answer.  
一支由伊莱·史利泽曼教授领导的来自华盛顿大学的科学家团队现已找到了答案。
3. 句型公式:the+比较级..., the+比较级...  
The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.  
我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. amazing *adj.* 惊人的,了不起的

[教材原文] The solution to the mystery of the monarch's **amazing** ability comes at a time when it is in serious trouble.

黑脉金斑蝶这一惊人能力的奥秘被揭开时,这一生物正处于水深火热的生存状态中。

[归纳拓展]

(1) amaze *v.* 使吃惊

(2) amazed *adj.* 感到惊奇的;吃惊的

be amazed at/by 对……感到惊奇

be amazed to do sth. 对做某事感到惊奇

(3) amazement *n.* 惊讶

(much) to one's amazement 令某人(非常)惊讶的是

in amazement 惊讶地;惊愕地

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① We invite you to join us on an amazing (amaze) journey of language learning.

② Much to my amazement (amaze), he has made rapid progress in English with the help of his teacher.

③ Hearing my words, the girl looked at me in amazement.

④ I was amazed to hear (hear) that Chris had won first prize.

### 2. survive *v.* 活下来,幸存;幸免于……,从……中艰难度过

[教材原文] The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will **survive** and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.

我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

[归纳拓展]

(1) survive on 依靠……生活

survive sb. (by... years) 比……活得长(……年)

(2) survivor *n.* 幸存者

(3) survival *n.* 幸存

名师点拨 ■■■■

survive 作动词时,还有“幸免于;从……中逃生;比……活(或存在)的时间长”之意。survive 表示“幸存”时,为不及物动词,可直接跟“疾病、灾难、事故、危机”等名词;表示“比某人长命”时,常以人作宾语。

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Workers built shelters for survivors (survive) after the earthquake.

② Of the six people injured in the crash, only two survived (survive).

③ It's reported that their chances of survival (survive) were small in this air disaster.

④ I don't know how you all manage to survive on your husband's salary.

### 3. effect *n.* 影响,结果

[教材原文] Then use the sentences to complete the “cause-effect” flow charts.

然后用句子完成“因果”流程图。

[归纳拓展]

(1) have an effect on/upon... 对……有影响

bring/put... into effect 使生效;实行,实施

come into effect 生效,开始实施

in effect 有效;在实施中;实际上

side effects 副作用

(2) effective *adj.* 有效的

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Since the new management system was put into effect, the production of this factory has increased greatly.

② Best of all, humour raises your energy, and that can have an effect on/upon everything you do at school, at work, or in your personal life.

③ Getting vaccinated (接种疫苗) is the most effective (effect) way to protect you from the virus.

④ The drug was withdrawn from sale after a number of people suffered serious side effects (effect).

### 4. the+比较级..., the+比较级...

[教材原文] **The more** we know about this lovely creature, **the greater** the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.

我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

[句式分析] 本句中 The more..., the greater... 为“the+比较级..., the+比较级...”句型。

## [归纳拓展]

(1)“the+比较级..., the+比较级...”句型,意为“越……,越……”,表示后者随着前者的变化而变化;

(2)前一个“the+比较级...”通常相当于比较状语从句或条件状语从句(在表示将来意义时,常用一般现在时表示将来),后一个“the+比较级...”通常相当于主句;

(3)在通常情况下,如果主、从句中的谓语动词是系动词 be,而且主语不是代词,be 动词可以省略。

## [即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① The harder (hard) you study, the more progress you'll make.
- ② The more you know, the more you will realise (realise) how little you know.
- ③ The more we know each other, the better (well) we understand each other.
- ④ It becomes warmer (warm) and warmer when spring comes.

## 课后素养评价(二十二)

## I. 单词拼写

1. He said that these measures (措施) were aimed at helping the poor.
2. The manager will have an interview with those who want to get the position (职位).
3. I determined (决心) to break myself of these bad habits so that I could keep fit.
4. Attempts to find a solution (解决方法) have failed.
5. Most buildings in my hometown were destroyed (破坏) by the sudden earthquake last year.
6. To everyone's surprise, he survived (从……中幸存) the earthquake.
7. On Chinese New Year's Eve, people usually get together to watch the annual (一年一度的) Spring Festival Gala on TV.
8. The most amazing (惊人的) thing about nature is its infinite (无穷无尽的) variety.
9. I think it's time we sought (寻求) some advice from our lawyer on this matter.
10. What the professor said in his speech had a great effect (影响) on the students present.

## II. 短语填空

cut down; lead to; feed on; in trouble;  
make sure; in search of

1. Cut down the article so as to make it fit the space available on the paper.
2. When you are in trouble, they will help you.
3. That door leads to the garden.
4. Cows feed on grass.
5. They went out in search of the lost boy.

6. It's going to rain. Make sure you close the window.

## III. 完成句子

1. They didn't finish their work until five o'clock in the afternoon.  
他们直到下午 5 点才完成工作。
2. We meet here at a time when China is developing rapidly.  
我们在中国正在快速发展的时候相遇在这里。
3. There are no simple solutions to solve the problem air pollution caused by some human activities.  
没有简单的解决方案来解决某些人类活动造成的空气污染问题。
4. There are enough books for students to read in the library.  
图书馆里有足够的书供学生阅读。
5. The more the people, the more the ideas.  
人多主意多。

## IV. 完形填空

When Ariel rode her bike to Jamaica Bay Wildlife Refuge, New York, she planned to go hiking and bird-watching. Bingo! A mile into her walk, she 1 a gorgeous female mute swan near the water's edge. Ariel, 30, who had worked at the Wild Bird Fund rehabilitation centre in Manhattan, knew that mute swans can be aggressive. But as she 2 this one, it didn't move.

She was certain that the bird needed medical 3. Ariel draped (盖) her jacket over the bird's head to keep it 4, cautiously picked it up, and held it in her arms 5. And then a thought struck

her: What should I do now?

Her best solution was the recovery centre, 6 that was across the East River and on the other side of town. How was she going to 7 a 17-pound swan on her bike all that way? 8, some strangers driving by offered her, her bike and the swan a 9 to a nearby subway station. On the subway, no one seemed particularly bothered by the 10 passenger. Ariel called the recovery centre, and Tristan, an animal-care manager, 11 Ariel at the subway station and drove them to the centre. The staff determined the swan might have lead poisoning and 12 to get the swan back up on its feet. Sadly, even with all that TLC, the swan contracted (患上) a bacterial infection. Two months later, it 13.

It's a disappointing ending, out the real story is just how far some people are 14 to go to save a swan—literally. In all, Ariel travelled two hours by foot, car, and 15. “That's the perfect summary of what she is,” said Tristan.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Ariel 不辞辛劳地救助一只受伤的天鹅的故事。

1. A. spotted B. smelled  
C. touched D. heard

A 根据上文的 “When Ariel rode her bike to Jamaica Bay Wildlife Refuge, New York, she planned to go hiking and bird-watching.” 可知, Ariel 准备去观鸟, 再根据 “Bingo!” 可知, 她发现了一只美丽的天鹅。

2. A. viewed B. approached  
C. frightened D. held

B 根据上文的 “knew that mute swans can be aggressive” 可知, 疣鼻天鹅有攻击性; 再根据转折可知, 当她接近时, 天鹅没有动。

3. A. attention B. source  
C. medicine D. experiment

A 根据下文的 “Her best solution was the recovery centre” 可知, 这只天鹅需要治疗。medical attention 意为 “医疗护理”, 符合语境。

4. A. surprised B. calm  
C. silent D. speechless

B 根据上文的 “Ariel draped (盖) her jacket over the bird's head” 可知, Ariel 为了让天鹅平静, 把外套盖在它的头上, 好抱着它去治疗。

5. A. excitedly B. suddenly  
C. gently D. powerfully

C 根据上文的 “cautiously picked it up” 可知, Ariel 很关心天鹅, 所以应是轻轻地抱在怀里。

6. A. unless B. and  
C. so D. but

D 根据上文的 “Her best solution was the recovery centre” 和下文的 “that was across the East River and on the other side of town” 可知, 表转折关系, 应该用 but 连接。

7. A. examine B. remove  
C. witness D. transport

D 根据上文的 “that was across the East River and on the other side of town” 可知, 康复中心离得很远, Ariel 担心怎么把天鹅运送到那里去。

8. A. Obviously B. Unfortunately  
C. Luckily D. Sadly

C 根据下文的 “some strangers driving by offered her, her bike and the swan a 9 to a nearby subway station” 可知, 在 Ariel 想如何送天鹅去康复中心时, 一群陌生人给她提供了帮助, 所以应表达 “幸运的是”。

9. A. lift B. gift  
C. bike D. hike

A 根据上文的 “some strangers driving by offered her, her bike and the swan a” 以及下文的 “to a nearby subway station” 可知, 一群陌生人让她搭便车到地铁站。offer sb. a lift 意为 “让某人搭便车”, 符合语境。

10. A. friendly B. beautiful  
C. feathered D. aggressive

C 根据语境可知, “passenger” 指的是天鹅, 即长着羽毛的乘客。

11. A. turned to B. picked up  
C. passed by D. gave up

B 根据下文的 “Ariel at the subway station and drove them to the centre” 可知, 应是在地铁站接 Ariel, 开车送他们去康复中心。

12. A. afforded B. pretended  
C. managed D. ordered

C 根据下文的 “to get the swan back up on its feet” 可知, manage to do sth. 意为 “尽力做某事”, 符合语境。

13. A. gave in B. flew away  
C. worked out D. passed away



D 根据下文的“*It’s a disappointing ending*”可知,最后是一个令人失望的结果,天鹅去世了。

14. A. willing                      B. afraid  
C. curious                      D. anxious

A 根据上文的“*some people are*”以及下文的“*to go to save a swan*”可知,一些人愿意为了救一只天鹅走远路,*be willing to do sth.*意为“愿意做某

事”,符合语境。

15. A. truck                      B. taxi  
C. plane                      D. subway

D 根据上文的“*some strangers driving by offered her, her bike and the swan a 9 to a nearby subway station*”可知,Ariel 花了两个小时走路、搭便车以及坐地铁。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. It is said that the factory was **founded** in 1995. 创立,创建  
2. “Let the cat out of the bag” is an **idiom** meaning to tell a secret by mistake. 习语  
3. Only the manager has the **authority** to sign cheques. 权力  
4. The sun is the major **source** of energy for our planet. 来源

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>accommodation</u> <i>n.</i> 住处,工作场所	<u>accommodate</u> <i>v.</i> 为(某人)提供住宿(或膳宿、座位等);容纳

III. 补全短语

1. for the first time 第一次  
2. as busy as a bee 忙得团团转  
3. hold your horses 慢点,别急  
4. instead of 而不是;代替

5. be busy (in) doing sth. 忙于做某事  
6. take... for example 以……为例  
7. live on one’s own 独自生活  
8. rain cats and dogs 下倾盆大雨

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:*it is possible to do sth.*  
People were excited—the zoo is the only place in the country where it is possible to see pandas.  
人们很兴奋——这个动物园是这个国家唯一有可能看到熊猫的地方。  
2. 句型公式:*the reason why... is that...*  
And of course, the main reason why they were so excited is that pandas are just so cute!  
当然,他们如此兴奋的主要原因是熊猫太可爱了!  
3. 句型公式:*watch sb. doing sth.*  
It is in a location where we can watch animals wandering past on their way to the waterhole.  
它是一个我们可以看到动物经过这条路漫步到水池的地方。

任务型课堂

**accommodation** *n.* 住处,工作场所

[教材原文]Our **accommodation** is perfect.  
我们的住处很完美。

[归纳拓展]

- (1)provide accommodations for 为……提供食宿  
(2)accommodate *v.* 为(某人)提供住宿(膳宿、座位等);使适应,顺应;容纳(乘客)  
*accommodate sb. with sth.* 给某人提供某物  
*accommodate... to...=adapt... to...*  
使……适应/迎合……(其中 *to* 为介词)  
*accommodate oneself to* 使自己适应……

*accommodate sb. for the night* 留某人过夜,让某人住一晚

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ①The price for the holiday includes flights and accommodations (*accommodate*).  
②The bank will accommodate the students whose family are poor with a loan.  
③You must accommodate yourself to the new environment as soon as possible.

语法探究

关系副词引导的定语从句

「语法感知」

- ①Eventually, it manages to reach the places **where** it will spend the winter.
- ②The solution to the mystery of the monarch's amazing ability comes at a time **when** it is in serious trouble.
- ③Sadly, human activity is the main reason **why** the number of monarch butterflies is falling.
- 句①②③中,定语从句的关系词 where, when, why 都是关系副词,在定语从句中分别作地点状语、时间状语和原因状语,先行词分别为表示地点、时间、原因的名词。

「语法精讲」

一、关系副词的指代及功能

关系副词	在从句中所作成分	先行词
when	指时间,在定语从句中作时间状语	表示时间的名词:time, moment, day, month, year, period 等
where	指地点,在定语从句中作地点状语	表示地点的名词:place, house, city, country, world, street 等及一些表示抽象地点的名词,如 point, case, position, condition, situation 等
why	指原因或理由,在定语从句中作原因状语	表示原因的名词:reason, excuse 等

I cannot forget the day **when** I first saw you.  
我永远不会忘记第一次见到你的日子。

This is the house **where** they lived a week ago.  
这是一个星期前他们住过的房子。

The reason **why** I don't trust him is that he often tells lies.  
我不信任他的原因是他常常撒谎。

二、关系副词引导的定语从句的注意事项

表示时间、地点及原因的名词作先行词时,定语从句可用关系副词引导,也可用关系代词引导。若关

系词在定语从句中作状语,应用关系副词;若关系词在定语从句中作主语或宾语,则应用关系代词。

Do you remember the days **when** we chatted with each other all night?  
你还记得我们整夜聊天的那些日子吗?

Do you remember the days **that/which** we spent together on the farm?  
你还记得我们在农场一起度过的那些日子吗?

I don't know the reason **why** he didn't turn to his good friend for help yesterday.  
我不知道昨天他为什么没向他的好朋友求助。

I won't listen to the reason **that/which** you have given us.  
我坚决不听你提供给我们的那个理由。

Can you recognise the house **where** you used to live with your parents?  
你能认出你曾经和父母一起住过的房子吗?

Can you recognise the house **that/which** Tom sold three years ago?  
你能认出汤姆三年前卖的那套房子吗?

三、“介词+关系代词”替代关系副词

关系副词 when, where, why 相当于“介词+which”结构:

when=on (in, at, during...)+which  
where=in (at, on...)+which  
why=for which

This is the town **where/in which** I was born.  
这就是我出生的城镇。

She won't forget the day **when/on which** she went to the senior high school for the first time.  
她永远不会忘记她第一次去高中就读的那一天。

The main reason **why/for which** he lost his job was that he often drank.  
他失去工作的主要原因是他经常酗酒。

「语法闯关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. We will put off the picnic in the park until next week when the weather may be better.

- The boss of the company is trying to create an easy atmosphere where his employees enjoy their work.
- The reason that/which he explained at the meeting was not sound.
- Keep the book in a place where you can find it easily.

## II. 完成句子

- This is the hospital where I was born.  
这是我出生的那家医院。
- I will never forget the day when we moved into  
our new house.  
我永远不会忘记我们搬进新居的那一天。
- We are living in an age when many things are  
done on computers.  
我们生活在许多事情可以在电脑上做的时代。
- After graduation he returned to the small town  
where he grew up.  
毕业以后,他回到那个他长大的小镇上。
- The reason why he could not go there was that he  
was ill in bed.  
他不能到那里去的原因是他卧病在床。

## 课后素养评价(二十三)

### I. 词语填空

found; idiom; instead of; source;  
accommodation; authority; take... for  
example; for the first time

- Your local library will be a useful source of information.
- Nothing will be done because no one in authority takes the matter seriously.
- He had a feeling for phrase and idiom.
- It was in Beijing that we met for the first time.
- Founded in 1935 in Ohio, Alcoholics Anonymous is now a world-wide organisation.
- The Rough Guide to Paris* lists accommodations for as little as \$35 a night.
- They raised prices and cut production, instead of cutting costs.
- You can take it for example that he always helps the old.
- Nobody knows the reason why she didn't attend the meeting.
- I'll never forget the time when we visited Xi'an.
- I didn't get a pay rise, but this wasn't the reason why I left.
- We visited the car factory where my uncle once worked three years ago.
- This is the factory that/which I visited last year.
- The train which/that has just left is for Shanghai.

### III. 阅读理解

The UN Environment Programme says that rising temperatures could mean the end of some migrating animals.

Migrating animals move through several environments as they travel away from the cold area into winter to warmer ones. Birds may fly from one part of the world to another, perhaps stopping at feeding grounds on the way. Whales and turtles travel through huge areas of ocean. A report says that changes in any one of the places where these animals stay can cause serious problems. "Obviously these animals have developed their travelling ways over thousands of years. But weather changes much greater over the next 25 to 50 years. And it is impossible for these animals to change their habits

## II. 单句语法填空

- The reason for which she changed her mind is quite clear.
- The days when they travelled together meant a lot to him.
- The hotel in which we stayed was built last year.
- The house where he lived 10 years ago has been pulled down.

fast enough,” said the report writer Dr Robert Hepworth.

Turtles are hit hardest by rising temperatures. Scientists have found that at higher temperatures, turtles have far more female eggs than male ones. In parts of Malaysia, turtles are only giving birth to female babies. And some turtles are more probable to develop cancer as the waters get warmer.

With birds, the main problem is the harm to important areas at the end of their travels or at resting places along the way. About one-fifth of immigration birds are now in danger because of these changes, including rising sea levels, land loss and more strong storms.

Some other animals are now in great danger. For example, the North Atlantic Right Whale is losing their food because of the changing ocean flows; the White-Nosed Dolphin is out-competed (淘汰) by other kinds in warmer waters.

The report is not all bad news. Even with the temperature changing, protecting the environment can still help migrating animals return. “We need governments to start taking action all over the world. The clock is ticking. We should make full use of every minute,” said Dr Hepworth. And now some projects are already working! Whales are changing their feeding habits, finding new feeding grounds and new foods to eat.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了气候变化对迁徙动物的影响。

1. Why do rising temperatures mean the end of some migrating animals?

- A. They stop moving through several environments.
- B. They can't suit the changes during their travelling.
- C. Their travelling habits will be changed fast enough.
- D. They keep flying from one part of the world to another.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Obviously

these animals have developed their travelling ways over thousands of years. But weather changes much greater over the next 25 to 50 years. And it is impossible for these animals to change their habits fast enough”可推知,气温升高意味着一些迁徙动物的灭绝是因为它们不能适应迁徙途中的变化。故选 B。

2. What is the result of the warming according to the passage?

- A. The North Atlantic Right Whale may find new food.
- B. Some turtles may develop cancer with the warm waters.
- C. 1/5 of migrating birds change their feeding habits.
- D. The White-Nosed Dolphin may have only female babies.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“And some turtles are more probable to develop cancer as the waters get warmer.”可知,变暖可能会导致一些海龟在温暖的海水中患上癌症。故选 B。

3. What does the underlined sentence “The clock is ticking.” mean?

- A. It takes time to achieve the project.
- B. It may be too late to save the world.
- C. It's time to solve the problems at once.
- D. It's important to stop animals from returning.

C 句意理解题。根据画线句前句“We need governments to start taking action all over the world.”和后句“We should make full use of every minute”可知,需要立即采取行动,时间很紧急。故画线句的意思是“是马上解决问题的时候了。”故选 C。

4. What's the main topic of the passage?

- A. Ways to prevent world warming.
- B. Steps to save the animals in danger.
- C. Animals' competition with others for food.
- D. Effects of rising temperatures on migrating animals.

D 主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段的内容可知,本文主要介绍了气温上升对迁徙动物的影响。故选 D。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

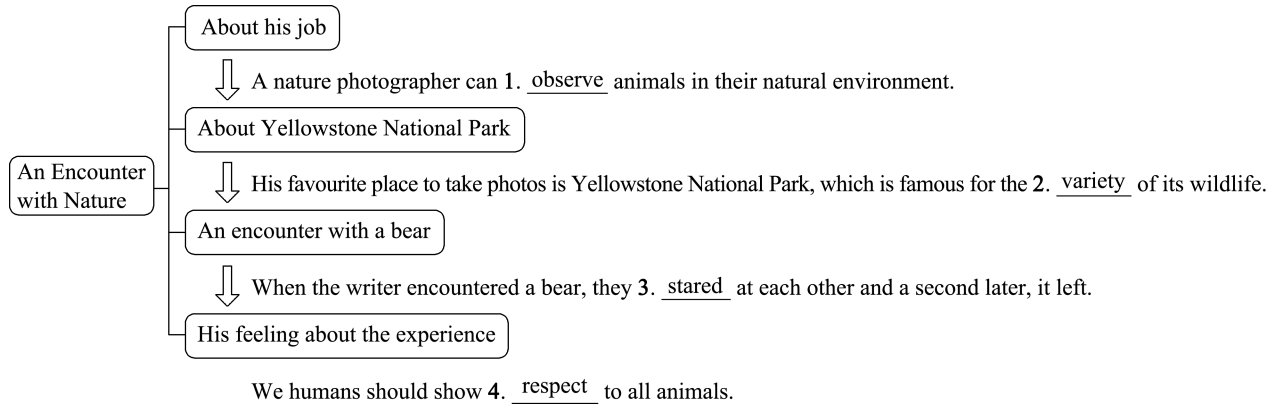
- 1. button *n.* 按钮
- 2. recover *v.* (从糟糕经历中)恢复
- 3. shock *n.* 吃惊,震惊
- 4. variety *n.* 多样化,变化
- 5. path *n.* 小径,小道
- 6. concentrate *v.* 专注,专心
- 7. freeze *v.* 突然停止,呆住
- 8. stare *v.* 凝视,盯着看
- 9. per *prep.* 每
- 10. image *n.* 图像,影像
- 11. reaction *n.* (对某一情形或事件的)反应
- 12. after all 毕竟,终究
- 13. be famous/known for 以……闻名

- 14. concentrate on 专心于,专注于
  - 15. recover from 从……中恢复过来
  - 16. show respect to 对……表示尊重
- (二)阅读词汇
- 1. photographer *n.* 摄影师
  - 2. element *n.* 基本部分,要素
  - 3. encounter *n.* 意外的相遇,邂逅
  - 4. breathtaking *adj.* 令人惊叹的
  - 5. eagle *n.* 鹰
  - 6. capture *v.* (用文字或图片)记录,捕捉
  - 7. file *n.* 档案,文件
  - 8. the elements 天气(尤指坏天气)
  - 9. brave the elements 不顾天气恶劣,冒着风雨
  - 10. at a speed of 以……的速度

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What attract (s) the author most as a nature photographer?
- A. The elements.
  - B. The wildness.

- C. The animals.
  - D. The forests.
- 答案:C
2. What can we know about the author?
- A. The bear is his favourite animal.
  - B. He likes taking photos but can't bear the extreme weather.

- C. He likes his job because he can observe animals in their natural environment.  
D. Facing the bear, he didn't move because he was very brave.

答案:C

3. Why does the author often look at the photo?  
A. Because it's a photo getting him recognised.  
B. Because it's the author's only photo taken in Yellowstone National Park.  
C. Because it often reminds him to respect animals.  
D. Because it's about an unexpected visitor.
4. What is the text mainly about?  
A. Working outside in the wild.  
B. Photos taken in Yellowstone National Park.  
C. An unforgettable experience in the wild.  
D. A photo taken with a brown bear.

答案:C

### 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

As a nature photographer, although I have to brave the elements, I enjoy 1. working (work) outside in the wild. I can observe animals in their 2. natural (nature) environment.

My favourite place to take photos is Yellowstone National Park, 3. which is the world's first national park. It is famous for the variety of its wildlife, especially its bears. Despite a weight of up to 300 kilograms, they can run at 4. a speed of around 64 kilometres per hour and are good at swimming.

Last spring in Yellowstone, I walked along a path through a dark forest. I was fascinated by this 5. amazing (amaze) scene. 6. Suddenly (sudden), I

found a bear staring back at me. I froze with my legs 7. shaking (shake). Somehow, I forced my finger 8. to press (press) the button. After a while, the bear turned and ran back into the forest. When I recovered 9. from the shock, I found my most frightening but magical experience 10. was captured (capture) forever in a single image.

The photo often reminds me to show respect to all animals.

#### Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. While I was concentrating on photographing this amazing scene, I suddenly had a feeling that I was being watched.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。While 引导时间状语从句, that 引导同位语从句。

[尝试翻译]当我正聚精会神地拍摄这惊人的景观时,我突然感觉有什么在盯着我看。

2. Time stood still as the bear and I both waited to see who would move first.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。as 引导时间状语从句, 从句中 who 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]时间凝固了,我和熊都等着看谁会先动。

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why did the author use "frightening but magical" to describe the experience in Paragraph 3?  
Because he risked his life to take a photo of a bear.
2. How can we get along with the wild animals?  
Try our best to protect them and not to disturb them. Ensure that they can freely live in their natural environment.

## 课后素养评价(二十四)

### I. 单词拼写

1. It was a shock (震惊) to discover that he lied to his parents about it.  
2. Honesty, industry and kindness are elements (要素) of a good life.

3. What if it rained and then froze (结冰) all through those months?  
4. If I find someone who looks like the thief, my immediate reaction (反应) will be to tell the police.



5. She is a talented musician as well as being a photographer (摄影师).
6. Adam pressed a button (按钮) and waited for the lift.
7. She did not notice the man until he moved into her path (小道).
8. He stared at his own image (影像) reflected in the water.

## II. 短语填空

stare at; concentrate on; after all; a variety of; up to; at a speed of; show respect to; be known/famous for

1. I can't concentrate on my work when I'm tired.
2. He lay on the lawn, staring at the sky.
3. A variety of food is sold at a supermarket.
4. After all, 15 minutes of exercise is better than nothing.
5. This dining hall can hold up to 2,000 students.
6. It is a coastal city and it is known/famous for its beaches.
7. The public show respect to the rescuers (救助者) and send their best wishes to them.
8. The train is travelling at a speed of sixty miles an hour.

## III. 完成句子

1. It was this man that/who helped me out when I was in trouble.  
我处于困境时,是这个人帮助我渡过了难关。
2. Suddenly one of the boys lost his balance and fell off his bike.  
突然,其中一个男孩失去了平衡,从自行车上掉了下来。
3. By the window sat a young man with a magazine in his hand.  
窗户边坐着一个年轻人,手里拿着一本杂志。
4. The patient is gradually recovering from the operation.  
病人正逐渐从手术中恢复过来。
5. While his mother was away, the boy cried from time to time.  
当他的母亲不在时,男孩不时哭泣。

## IV. 七选五

As days are getting shorter and colder, people can often find themselves feeling sad or lacking the motivation to do anything. One possible reason for those feelings is seasonal affective disorder (SAD), which is common during the cold months. 1 If your dog loses interest in its favourite games or walks, they may be experiencing it. Here's how to give your dog's mood a boost.

### Pay close attention to your dog's behaviour.

Analysing your dog's behaviour will help you get a better understanding of whether they may be feeling sad. 2 Knowing what to expect throughout the day and feeling comfortable in their surroundings is very important for a dog.

### 3

Even when you're inside, make sure to spend time playing or training your dog. Try to come up with new games that require you to interact with your dog. This is a great way to get your pet excited and boost their mood, and yours, too.

### Provide them with as much sunlight as possible.

As with humans, the lack of sunlight during the winter can cause lower mood levels, so it is very important for your dog to get as much sunlight exposure as possible. 4 You can also try other strategies such as moving their beds closer to windows, or even use more artificial lighting.

### Ensure your dogs get exercise during the day.

The winter months are colder and darker, and it might be wanting to skip an exercise or a walk outside, but much like humans, this can have a significant effect on your dog's mood. 5

- A. Spend time interacting with your dog.
- B. Calm your dog down with relaxing activities.
- C. Whenever possible, take your dog outside for a walk.
- D. Observe their behaviour for a while and speak to a vet if needed.
- E. While we know people can suffer from SAD, can dogs get SAD too?
- F. Changes in routine or environment can cause your dog to feel unwell.
- G. Even a short walk can help improve your dog's mood and also your own.

答案: 1~5 EFACG

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I pressed a **button** and the door closed slowly. 按钮
2. The scientists will study the **variety** of trees and observe which are fruiting. 多样化, 变化
3. Fitness has now become an important **element** in our lives. 基本部分, 要素
4. The story describes the **encounter** between a man and his wife. 意外的相遇, 邂逅
5. She **stared** at him with wide eyes. 凝视, 盯着看
6. The water flows at about 1.5 metres **per** second. 每
7. I walked nervously up the garden **path** towards the front door. 小径, 小道
8. Slowly, an **image** began to appear on the screen. 图像, 影像
9. **Files** can be lost if the system suddenly crashes. 档案, 文件

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>photographer</u> <i>n.</i> 摄影师	<u>photograph</u> <i>n.</i> 照片
	<u>photography</u> <i>n.</i> 摄影; 摄影术
<u>recover</u> <i>v.</i> (从糟糕经历中)恢复	<u>recovery</u> <i>n.</i> 恢复; 痊愈; 改善; 复苏
<u>shock</u> <i>n.</i> 吃惊, 震惊	<u>shocking</u> <i>adj.</i> 惊人的; 骇人的; 令人难以置信的
	<u>shocked</u> <i>adj.</i> 吃惊的; 震惊的
<u>concentrate</u> <i>v.</i> 专注, 专心	<u>concentration</u> <i>n.</i> 集中; 专心
	<u>concentrated</u> <i>adj.</i> 集中的; 全力以赴的; 浓缩的
<u>freeze</u> <i>v.</i> 突然停止, 呆住	<u>freezing</u> <i>adj.</i> 极冷的
	<u>frozen</u> <i>adj.</i> 冷冻的; 冻僵的
	<u>freezer</u> <i>n.</i> 冰柜

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>reaction</u> <i>n.</i> (对某一情形或事件的)反应	<u>react</u> <i>v.</i> 作出反应, 回应; 起化学反应

III. 补全短语

1. show respect to 对……表示尊重
2. be famous/known for 以……闻名
3. at a speed of 以……的速度
4. concentrate on 专心于, 专注于
5. recover from 从……中恢复过来
6. from time to time 不时, 偶尔
7. after all 毕竟, 终究
8. except for 除了……
9. look like 看起来像
10. take place 发生

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: one of + 可数名词复数  
One of the best things about this job is that you can observe animals in their natural environment.  
这份工作的最大的好处之一是你观察到自然环境中的动物。
2. 句型公式: 完全倒装句  
Only metres away from me was a bear.  
离我只有几米远的是一只熊。
3. 句型公式: with 复合结构  
With water falling off its thick, brown hair, the bear stared back at me.  
它也盯着我, 水珠从它那厚厚的棕色皮毛上滴下来。
4. 句型公式: 强调句型  
It is after all we who are the visitors to their world.  
毕竟, 我们才是他们世界的访客。

## 任务型课堂

1. variety *n.* 多样化, 变化; 种类, 品种

[教材原文] As the world's first national park, Yellowstone is famous for the **variety** of its wildlife, but it is probably best known for its bears.

作为世界上第一个国家公园, 黄石公园因其野生生物多样性而闻名, 不过其中最广为人知的可能还是那里的熊。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) a variety of = varieties of 各种各样的

(2) vary *v.* (使)变化, 不同

vary from... to... 从……到……不同

vary with... 随……而变化

(3) various *adj.* 各种各样的

## 名师点拨

a variety of/varieties of 后接名词时, 谓语动词的单复数与名词的数保持一致; “the variety of + 复数名词”意为“……的品种”, 作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式。

## [即学即练]

单句语法填空

① Generally speaking, prices of fruit and vegetables vary with the season.

② In my free time, I'll continue to take regular exercise, such as swimming, running and various (vary) ball games.

③ The research team is made up of pupils, whose ages vary from 10 to 15.

④ (2023 · 新课标 I 卷) We offer the newest bicycles in a wide variety (vary), including basic bikes with foot brake (刹车), bikes with hand brake and gears (排挡)...

2. concentrate *v.* 专注, 专心

[教材原文] While I was **concentrating** on photographing this amazing scene, I suddenly had a feeling that I was being watched.

当我正聚精会神地拍摄这惊人的景观时, 我突然感觉有什么在盯着我看。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) concentrate... on/upon... 把……专注于/集中于……

concentrate on/upon... 专注于……

(2) concentration *n.* 专心, 专注; 集中

with concentration 专心思考, 专心致志

(3) concentrated *adj.* 集中的; 全力以赴的; 浓缩的

## 名师点拨

表示“专心于; 致力于”的短语还有 be addicted to, be buried/lost/absorbed in, be devoted to, put one's heart into, focus on/upon 等。

## [即学即练]

单句语法填空

① It was her concentration (concentrate) on scientific research that made her succeed at last.

② I can't concentrate on/upon my work this morning with several children shouting loudly outside.

③ With his attention concentrated (concentrate) on his book, he didn't notice someone entering his room.

④ He made a concentrated (concentrate) effort to finish the work on time.

## 3. 强调句型

[教材原文] **It is** after all we **who** are the visitors to their world.

毕竟, 我们才是他们世界的访客。

[句式分析] 本句中 It is... who... 为强调句型, 此时 who 可以改为 that。

## [归纳拓展]

强调句型基本结构

(1) 陈述句式: It is/was + 被强调部分 + that/who (强调部分为主语, 指人) + 句子其余部分。

(2) 一般疑问句式: Is/Was it + 被强调部分 + that/who + 句子其余部分?

(3) 特殊疑问句式: 特殊疑问词 + is/was it + that + 句子其余部分?

(4) 含有 not... until... 的句式: It is/was not until + 强调部分 + that + 非强调部分。

## 名师点拨

强调句型的判断: 将强调句结构中的 It is/was 和 that/who 去掉, 如果句子所剩下的部分不缺少任何成分, 仍是一个完整的句子, 这个句子就是强调句, 否则就是其他从句。

〔即学即练〕

### (1)单句语法填空

①It was only when the car pulled up in front of our house that we saw Lily in the passenger seat.

②It was my sister that/who helped me out when I was in trouble.

## (2) 句型转换

I didn't realise that she was a famous film star until she took off her dark glasses.

→ It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I realised that she was a famous film star.  
(改为强调句)

## 多义词汇专练

## 1. freeze

A. v. 结冰

### B. v. 冷冻贮藏

C. v. (因害怕等) 停住不动

① We ate some of the fruit and **froze** the rest.

② Water **freezes** when the temperature falls below  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

③The child **froze** at the sight of the snake.

**2. Birds concentrate** in places where they can find enough food.

A. v. 集中(注意力)

### B. $v$ . 聚集

C. v. 浓缩

## 写作探究

## 描写一种动物

### 「写作指导」

关于动物的话题有三种写作文体：

1. 说明文:介绍某种动物,可从动物形体、习性、特点等方面展开;
2. 议论文:动物与人类的关系以及如何保护动物;克隆动物的利和弊;
3. 应用文:建议信(如何保护动物;写信投诉人类对动物的伤害),保护动物的演讲稿及倡议信等;保护动物的文章常常是首先说明现状,比如数量减少,分析造成的原因,然后提出一些可行的建议。

### 「典题示例」

请根据以下要点写一篇文章,介绍大熊猫。

1. 大熊猫是中国的稀有动物,也是地球上最珍稀的动物之一,受到人们的喜爱;
2. 大熊猫生活在山里,以竹子为食,由于山林遭到破坏,竹子被砍伐,大熊猫觅食越来越困难;
3. 我国已建立数个自然保护区来保护大熊猫。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

---

---

---

---

---

### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. 引入话题 2. 具体介绍大熊猫的情况 3. 总结

### Step 2: 要点补全

① The giant panda is not only (不仅) a rare animal in China, but also (而且) one of the rarest animals on earth.

②It is loved by people (受到人们的喜爱) all over the world.

③ The mountains are home to the giant panda, and it feeds on bamboo (以竹子为食) there.

④As more and more forests (越来越多的森林) are being destroyed and most of the bamboo has been cut down (已经被砍伐), it is becoming more and more difficult (越来越困难) for giant pandas to seek food for themselves.

⑤ To save them (为了救它们), China has founded several nature reserves.

⑥It's high time that we should take measures to protect them immediately (立即采取措施来保护它们).

Step 3: 句式升级

①将 Step 2 中句①升级为 not only 置于句首引起的倒装句。

Not only is the giant panda a rare animal in China, but also one of the rarest animals on earth.

②将 Step 2 中句③升级为含有关系副词引导的定语从句的句子。

The mountains are home to the giant panda, where it feeds on bamboo.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Not only is the giant panda a rare animal in China, but also one of the rarest animals on earth. It is loved by people all over the world.

The mountains are home to the giant panda, where it feeds on bamboo. As more and more forests are being destroyed and most of the bamboo has been cut down, it is becoming more and more difficult for giant pandas to seek food for themselves. To save them, China has founded several nature reserves.

It's high time that we should take measures to protect them immediately.

「学以致用」

请根据要点写一篇短文,介绍华南虎。

动物	华南虎(South China Tiger)是世界级濒危物种之一
栖息地	中国
现有的数目	野生数量为 0;还有 200 多只华南虎生活在保护区
濒危的原因	栖息地的减少;人类为了获取它的虎皮和虎骨对其进行捕杀
保护措施	拒绝购买虎制品

- 注意:1. 词数 80 左右;  
2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考范文:

The South China Tiger, whose habitat is in China, is one of the most endangered animals in the world.

There are only about 30 to 80 South China Tigers living in the reserve with none in the wild. The reduction of their habitats and people's hunting for their fur and bones have left them in danger. So it is high time that we should take actions to protect them.

Don't buy any tiger products or we will only see them in the museums in the near future.

课后素养评价(二十五)

I. 单句语法填空

- What a variety of salads you've got on your menu!
- With prices going (go) up so fast, we can't afford luxuries (奢侈品).
- He was shocked (shock) at the news.
- What was his reaction (react) to the new plan?
- A car ran by me at a high speed of about 120 km/h.
- He is in hospital, recovering from a heart attack.
- You should forgive him for his forgetfulness; after all, he is over seventy.
- She stared at him, frozen with shock.
- Sydney is famous for its Opera House and the Sydney Harbour Bridge.
- It's believed that children should show respect to their parents.

II. 完成句子

- Between the two buildings stands a tall tree.  
在两座大楼之间有一棵高高的树。
- With so much noise going around, he found it hard to concentrate on his study.  
周围有这么多的噪音,他发现很难专注于他的学习。
- He will always remember the day when his father returned from America.  
他将永远记得父亲从美国返回的那一天。
- I don't know the reason why he didn't come to the meeting yesterday morning.  
我不知道他为什么没有参加昨天上午的会议。

III. 语法填空

Water goes around and around the earth in a never-ending journey 1. called (call) the water cycle.  
2. The sun heats up lakes, oceans and other wet



places on the earth. When the water gets enough **3. warmth** (warm), it changes into vapour (蒸汽). Plants also give off lots of water vapour. After **4. cooling** (cool) off high in the sky and becoming clouds, some of the vapour falls back to the earth in a new place as rain or snow. This cycle **5. happens** (happen) over and over again.

The ground can absorb water. If you could see the groundwater, it wouldn't look like a lake **6. or** river. The groundwater is mixed in with the rocks and sand **7. that/which** lie in layers (层) below the earth's surface.

Groundwater moves along slowly. Can you imagine how slowly? Maybe 1.5 kilometres in one century. Some of this water has been underground for **8. thousands** (thousand) of years. And once groundwater **9. is drawn** (draw) out of the ground from a deep well by people, it may take many years for water from another place to take **10. its** (it) place.

#### IV. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华, 你的美国朋友 Peter 想了解大象。请你用英语给他写一封邮件, 根据下面的提示给他介绍一下大象这种动物。

1. 大象是陆地上最大的动物, 出生时约有 100 千克重, 一米高。
2. 大象皮肤是灰色的, 有长鼻子和两只大耳朵。它们通常生活在河谷中, 以草和树叶为食, 每天喝大量的水。
3. 大家通常群居, 互相照顾; 非洲大象每年迁徙。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 使行文连贯。

参考范文:

Dear Peter,

The elephant is the largest animal on land today. It weighs about one hundred kilograms and is about one metre high when born. The elephant, whose colour is grey, has a long trunk and two big ears. It usually lives in valleys where there is enough grass or leaves, for it mainly feeds on grass and leaves. It drinks a lot of water every day. The elephants in Africa migrate to find nice food every year. They usually live in groups and care for each other.

Yours,  
Li Hua

##### 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

We went to Darjelling during the summer holidays and booked a cottage (农舍) for our stay. Our cook Gopi came with us because we could not do without home-cooked meals.

Usually all the shopping was done by our home help—Bharat, who had accompanied (陪伴) us to our holiday destination. However, one early evening, my mother decided to do all the vegetable shopping by herself. She believed that Bharat did not wait to check the really fresh items and instead, bought randomly in a hurry. As a result, the vegetables he brought back were not fresh.

After getting ready, she took her favourite purse with quite an amount of money, thinking she could go to other shops too after finishing at the vegetable market. My mother asked Bharat to get a rickshaw for her and on reaching the market she asked the rickshaw wallah (人力车夫) to wait for her. She took a coolie and did her shopping happily, choosing some of the freshest green vegetables available there. At last, her shopping was done. She returned to the rickshaw and sat on it while the coolie put all the things my mother had bought onto the rickshaw.

On reaching home, Bharat took all the packets of vegetables inside and my mother quickly paid the rickshaw wallah and got off, forgetting to collect her purse from the seat of the rickshaw. The rickshaw wallah left soon after saying goodbye to my mother. All of us greeted my mother and asked her about her evening of shopping with much delight.

Then we began to help my mother prepare our dinner. My father came to help chop the meat; I helped wash the vegetables; we were talking and laughing. When dinner was about to be announced, it was late in the evening, almost 9 pm.

注意: 续写词数应为 150 左右。

参考范文:

Then my mother realised her purse was missing. She looked everywhere for it and suddenly remembered that after paying the rickshaw wallah, she kept the purse on the seat before getting off. She had forgotten to pick up her purse which contained a lot of money. When my father came to know about this, he said that it was too late to look for the rickshaw wallah. We all decided that it was better to forget it. Mother felt sad and worried while sitting for dinner.

We were just about to begin eating when the doorbell rang. Bharat opened the door and called my mother to see who it was. To our surprise, it was the poor rickshaw wallah standing at our entrance with a big smile on his weather-beaten face. He had the purse in his hand. He explained that he had returned to the market before he realised what had happened. When my mother opened her purse, she found all the cash in it. We wanted to reward the lovely man but he smiled and said, "Madam, I'm poor but not a thief." And he went away quickly.



## 读后续写技能养成

## 动物描写之外貌和动作

## 「技能概述」

1. 动物描写之外貌和动作:是指对生活中常见的动物的外貌和动作描写,如狗、猫、鹦鹉、鸽子、蜜蜂、蝴蝶等。
2. 续写技巧:描写动物的外貌和动作时,要抓住家养动物和野生动物各自的特点,如家养动物温顺乖巧,野生动物凶残威猛等。

## 「范例体悟」

Dad put the box on the ground and opened the top. A shiny little wet nose popped up. Then two fluffy paws. Poppy was amazed. She wagged furiously. She smiled, her tongue lolling out as she investigated the surprise. The little creature jumped out with painstaking efforts and yapped around Poppy. They sniffed each other like old friends. Dad laughed.

找出文中描写动物的外貌和动作的词汇并写下来。

A shiny little wet nose popped up; two fluffy paws; wagged furiously; smiled; her tongue lolling out; investigated; jumped out with painstaking efforts and yapped around Poppy; sniffed each other like old friends

## 「词句储备」

## I. 好词积累

## (一)动物的外貌

1. sharp teeth 锋利的牙齿
2. golden fur 金黄色的毛
3. two big round eyes 两只圆溜溜的大眼睛
4. a pair of large watery eyes 一双水汪汪的大眼睛
5. a nose like a black gem 黑宝石般的鼻子

## (二)动物的动作

1. bark v. 吠
2. lick v. 舔
3. smell/sniff v. 嗅
4. wag the tail 摇尾巴
5. put the ears up 把耳朵竖起来
6. bite the corner of the coat 咬住衣角
7. hold it tightly with the paws 用爪子紧紧抓住
8. rest the nose in its paws 把鼻子搁在爪子里
9. keep its forelegs doubled up 保持前腿弯曲
10. rub their necks and backs with their paws 用爪子抓挠它们的脖子和背部
11. keep scratching you with his front paws 用它的前爪不停地挠你
12. raise its whole body on its hind legs 用后腿支起全身
13. howl at me with her head low 它低着头对我嚎叫

## II. 佳句背诵

1. I opened the door and saw a tiny white furry ball with black spots trying to get under our door mat. 我打开门,看到一个极小的带有黑色斑点的白色“毛球”正试图钻到我们的门垫下面。
2. The dog has golden fur which feels very comfortable, like touching the soft cotton. 小狗有着金黄色的毛,摸起来十分舒服,像是摸着柔软的棉花一样。
3. The dog clung to his feet and looked at him with bright eyes. 小狗紧贴着他的脚,用明亮的眼睛看着他。
4. Upon his master's arrival, the dog leapt to his feet, snorted happily and bounded forward. 主人一到,这只狗就跳起来,高兴地哼了一声,向前跳跃着。
5. He stretched, shook himself and circled several times before dropping to the ground. 他伸了伸懒腰,抖了抖身子,绕了几圈才落到地上。

## 「技能达标」

## I. 完成句子

1. The dog curled into a ball and lay shivering on the ground. 那只狗蜷缩成一团,躺在地上瑟瑟发抖。
2. Lying on the ground, the dog kept his eyes wide open, ears flat, a growl deep in his chest. 那只狗躺在地上,眼睛睁得大大的,耳朵耷拉着,胸口深处发出一声咆哮。
3. Dogs take much pleasure in rolling and rubbing their necks and backs with their paws. 狗很喜欢打滚并用爪子抓挠自己的脖子和后背。
4. Seeing the meat in the master's hand, the little dog wagged its tail and watched with hopeful eyes. 看到主人手里的肉,小狗摇着尾巴,充满希望地看着。

## II. 用动物的外貌和动作描写完成下面的语段

While he was thinking about where to race, the black bear 1. was staring at them (正盯着他们) in the distance, 2. walking slowly (慢慢地走着)! All of a sudden, he was spotted by the bear, screamed in fear and ran like crazy! He was very agile and climbed straight up the tree to avoid the bear's attack! The bear 3. growled at him (朝他嚎叫) under the tree and 4. tried to climb up and attack (企图爬树并攻击), but 5. due to its heavy body (由于它身子笨重), it only 6. left a few long claw marks (留下几道长长的爪子印) on the tree and finally gave up the attack!

Unit 6 At one with nature

必背 单词	wrap, sheet, dynasty, region, therefore, shallow, prevent, harmony, design, harm, agriculture, replace, material, priority, beauty, barrier, living, narrow, platform, desert, climate, inside, publish, expert, branch, rent, limited, benefit, pleasant, energy, system
重点 表达	turn... into, plenty of, be home to, be covered in, in harmony with, from the bottom to the very top, be in doubt, reflect on, wash away, pass down, lead to, go to the trouble to do sth.
重点 知识	1. make+it+ <i>adj.</i> +for sb. to do sth. 2. “否定词+比较级”表示最高级含义
单元 语法	“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句
单元 写作	概要写作
主题 美文 赏读	<p>There are several rice terraces in the Ifugao region but the Banaue Rice Terraces are the most popular tourist spot. The photos of this area are often used in printed materials like textbooks, magazines and postcards. After getting a good look at the rice terraces, I was reminded of the first time that I saw their pictures in our textbook during my elementary days. I already found them amusing as a kid and seeing their beauty as an adult got me more amazed.</p> <p>伊富高地区有几个梯田,但巴拿威梯田是最受欢迎的旅游景点。这个地区的照片经常被用在教科书、杂志和明信片等印刷材料上。仔细看了看梯田后,我想起了小学时第一次在课本上看到梯田的照片。我小时候就觉得它们很有趣,长大后看到它们的美丽让我更加惊讶。</p>

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Comprehending

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

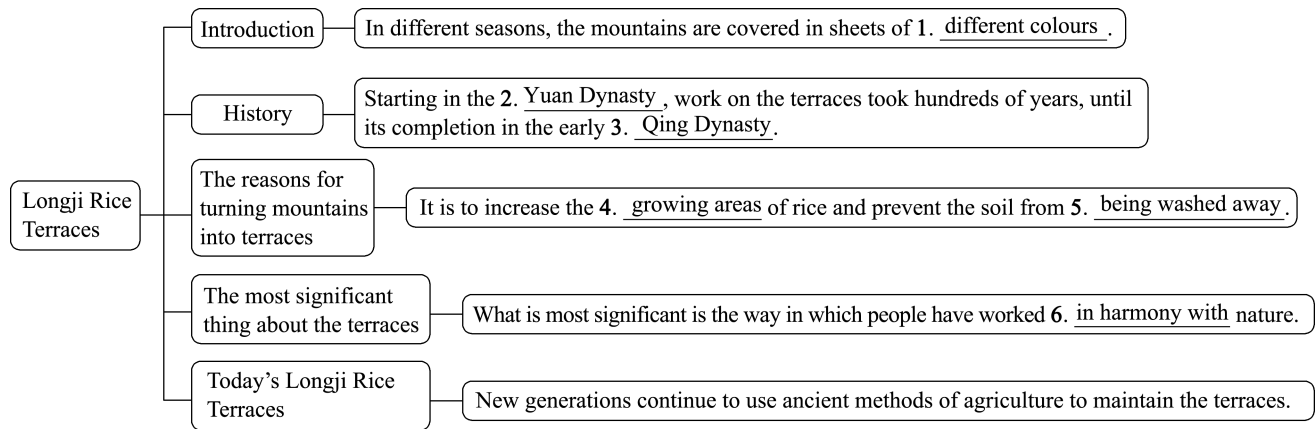
- 1. completion *n.* 完成,结束
- 2. dynasty *n.* 朝代
- 3. region *n.* 地区,区域
- 4. therefore *adv.* 因此,由此
- 5. soil *n.* 土壤
- 6. shallow *adj.* 浅的
- 7. prevent *v.* 阻挡,防止
- 8. harmony *n.* 融洽相处,和谐
- 9. design *v.* 设计
- 10. harm *v.* 伤害,损害
- 11. crop *n.* 庄稼,作物
- 12. agriculture *n.* 农业
- 13. provide... for... 为……提供……
- 14. be home to 是……的故乡/发源地/所在地
- 15. be covered in 被覆盖在……下面

- 16. go to the trouble to do sth. 费心做某事
  - 17. from the bottom to the very top 从底部一直延伸到顶部
  - 18. pass down 传下来;传递
- (二)阅读词汇
- 1. sheet *n.* (冰或水等的)一大片
  - 2. frost *n.* 霜
  - 3. terrace *n.* 梯田
  - 4. wrap *v.* 包,裹
  - 5. steep *adj.* 陡的,陡峭的
  - 6. vapour *n.* 蒸气
  - 7. plenty of 充足的,相当多的
  - 8. prevent... from 阻挡,防止;使……免于……
  - 9. turn... into... 把……变成……
  - 10. wash away 冲走
  - 11. in harmony with 与……和谐相处

多维化析文

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What's the main idea of the text?

- A. The Longji Rice Terraces will have a bright future.
- B. How people worked in harmony with nature to create the Longji Rice Terraces.
- C. The Longji Rice Terraces are fascinating all around the year.

D. The reason why Longji Rice Terraces were built.

答案:B

2. What dynasty can the terraces date back to?

- A. The Yuan Dynasty.
- B. The Ming Dynasty.
- C. The Qing Dynasty.
- D. The Tang Dynasty.

答案:A

3. How many reasons are there for locals to build terraces?

- A. One.      B. Two.      C. Three.      D. Four.

答案:B

4. How do the local people get along with nature?

- A. Badly.                      B. Harmoniously.
- C. Worse.                      D. Not mentioned.

答案:B

### ▶ 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

The Longji Rice Terraces were built by the local Zhuang and Yao people in Guangxi. 1. Starting (start) in the Yuan Dynasty, work on the terraces took hundreds of years, until its 2. completion (complete) in the early Qing Dynasty. Reaching as far 3. as the eye can see, these terraces cover tall mountains, often from the bottom to 4. the very top. So why did these people go to so much trouble 5. to turn (turn) the entire mountains into terraces? Firstly, they could increase the areas in 6. which they could grow rice. Secondly, the flat terraces catch the rainwater and prevent the soil from 7. being washed (wash) away. The terraces are 8. cleverly (clever) designed, with hundreds of waterways that connect with each other. During the rainy season, rainwater moves down the mountains and into the terraces along these waterways. The ancient methods of agriculture 9. are passed (pass) down through families. Today, the Longji Rice Terraces attract thousands of visitors who come to admire this great wonder 10. created (create) by people and nature working together.

#### Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. But perhaps what is most significant is the way in which people have worked in harmony with nature to make these terraces and grow rice.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。what is most significant 是 what 引导的主语从句, what 在从句中作主语; is 是系动词; the way 作表语, 后面是 in which 引导的定语从句, in which 在此相当于 that, 还可以省略。

[尝试翻译]但也许最重要的还是人与自然和谐相处建造梯田并种植水稻的方式。

2. Although modern technology could help produce more crops, these terraces still mean a lot to the local people for whom traditions hold much value.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。Although 引导让步状语从句, 相当于 Though/While; 主句中 for whom traditions hold much value 是“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句。

[尝试翻译]尽管现代技术可以帮助提高农作物产量, 但这些梯田对珍视传统的当地人来说仍然意义重大。

3. Today, the Longji Rice Terraces attract thousands of visitors who come to admire this great wonder created by people and nature working together.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。who 引导定语从句, 修饰前面的名词 visitors; created by people and nature working together 是过去分词短语作后置定语, 修饰前面的名词 wonder。

[尝试翻译]今天, 龙脊梯田吸引了成千上万的游客前来欣赏这由人与自然共同创造的壮丽奇观。

### ▶ 思维品质培养

#### Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why do the new generations continue to use ancient methods of agriculture?

Because the local people value traditions and the knowledge is passed down through families.

2. In what other ways do people live in harmony with nature? Give an example.

Protect wetlands. In our hometown, in order to protect the arrival of wild geese every spring, the local government has protected the wetland, so

that wild geese can have a place to live and rest. When wild geese fly around us in spring, it makes us feel at ease.

课后素养评价(二十六)

I. 阅读理解

The idea of growing food in a desert would make most people laugh but this is quickly becoming a reality. There are currently two desert farms in the world where quality vegetables are being planted cheaply and easily.

Sundrop Farms, based in South Australia, uses experimental greenhouses to grow tomatoes, peppers and cucumbers. The biggest challenge of growing food in a desert, obviously, is the lack of available water. The researchers at Sundrop Farms have gotten around this problem by using the sun to desalinate (淡化) sea water. It can also be used to control the temperature of the greenhouses.

Without depending on limited resources such as land and fresh water Sundrop Farms has made farming a practice. This can increase the world's food supplies. Another benefit of this kind of farming is that it can be done anywhere, thus reducing the costs of transporting food to distant locations. Yet another benefit is that it reduces the need for pesticides (杀虫剂).

Another experimental desert farm is the Sahara Forest Project, which began in Qatar in December 2012. Greenhouses in the farm are cooled by saltwater. Solar power and other technologies are used together to help make vegetation (植被) grow in the desert environment. As deserts have expanded over recent years around the world due to global warming, this project could solve the problem.

The result from the Qatar project was better

than expected and in June of 2014, Jordan agreed to host another one. This will be much bigger than the Qatar project and the project members will have even more opportunities to test their experiments on a much larger scale. It is not clear yet that desert farming represents the future of farming but these projects have shown some success in the field.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了沙漠农业的相关项目。

1. What do the underlined words “this problem” in Paragraph 2 refer to?

- A. Sea water is hard to purify.
- B. The desert is short of water.
- C. The temperature is high in the desert.
- D. Desert farms aren't fit to plant vegetables.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词前句“The biggest challenge of growing food in a desert, obviously, is the lack of available water.”和后半句“by using the sun to desalinate (淡化) sea water”可知,通过利用阳光淡化海水来解决沙漠中缺水的问题。故画线词“this problem”指代上文中所提到的“lack of available water”。故选 B。

2. What is one of the characters of desert farming?

- A. It needs more pesticides.
- B. It saves delivery costs.
- C. It has a location limit.
- D. It solves food waste problems.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Another benefit of this kind of farming is that it can be done anywhere, thus reducing the costs of transporting food to distant locations.”可知,沙漠

农业可以在任何地方进行,进而减少食物运送成本。故选 B。

3. What can we know about the Sahara Forest Project?

- A. It is beyond expectations.
- B. It can help produce more food.
- C. It is started to prevent global warming.
- D. It uses technology to produce saltwater.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“The result from the Qatar project was better than expected”可知,撒哈拉森林项目的结果比预想的好。故选 A。

4. What can be inferred about desert farming from the last paragraph?

- A. It still has problems to solve.
- B. It represents the future of farming.
- C. Its early success has aroused interest in it.
- D. Its aim is to create more job opportunities.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“The result from the Qatar project was better than expected and in June of 2014, Jordan agreed to host another one.”和“It is not clear yet that desert farming represents the future of farming but these projects have shown some success in the field.”可知,撒哈拉森林项目的结果比预想的好,约旦赞同再进行一个。从而推断,沙漠农场项目早期的成功已经引起了人们对沙漠农场的兴趣。故选 C。

## II. 七选五

Worried about the climate? 1. Here are some examples to get you started.

### • Count the birds and the bees

Get closer to nature by becoming a citizen scientist. You could be counting birds in your garden, butterflies, insects and flowers, or even reptiles and hedgehogs. 2. It's a fun group

activity, and your data can help scientists better understand the impact of human behaviour on natural habitats.

### • 3

Media headlines can be alarming when it comes to the climate and nature crisis or ignoring the issues completely. Hosting a local discussion can allow space for reflection, debate, ideas and collaboration (合作) to take action on global issues at a local level.

### • Set up a library of things

Internet shopping has made it too easy to buy new stuff at the click of a button. 4? First, it'll clutter (凌乱地塞满) your house, then it'll clutter the planet. Setting up a library of things can encourage local people to share everything from tools to instruments, cooking gadgets to toys.

### • Start a climate emergency centre

5. That's why more and more climate emergency centres are popping up in derelict (废弃的) shops on high streets and in shopping centres. A climate emergency centre can be a space for events such as an exhibition on plastic waste or a workshop to learn how to make eco-cleaning products. It can also be a way to motivate more people to take action.

- A. Cooperate with your locals
- B. But where is it all going to end up
- C. Host a climate and nature discussion
- D. But how have we consumed the things
- E. The climate and nature crisis isn't going away
- F. There are lots of citizen science projects to take part in
- G. Small local actions with neighbours, local businesses and politicians can make a difference

答案:1~5 GFCBE



Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I want to **wrap** the presents in red paper. 包, 裹
2. The Tang **Dynasty** was the golden age of classical Chinese poetry. 朝代
3. It rained and **therefore** the football match was put off. 因此, 由此
4. We can see clearly from the chart that the two **regions** differ greatly in climate. 地区, 区域
5. Some parts of the river are very **shallow**, while it is very deep in other places. 浅的
6. Water the plant regularly, never letting the **soil** dry out. 土壤
7. The Bai have an agricultural economy, their main **crops** being rice, wheat, beans and cotton. 庄稼, 作物
8. Loch Affric (艾菲力克湖) is a lovely **sheet** of water among trees. (冰或水等的)一大片

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>completion</u> <i>n.</i> 完成, 结束	complete <i>adj.</i> 完全的, 彻底的 <i>v.</i> 完成 completely <i>adv.</i> 彻底地, 完全地; 完整地
<u>harmony</u> <i>n.</i> 融洽相处, 和谐	harmonious <i>adj.</i> 和谐的, 融洽的, 协调的; 悦耳的
<u>design</u> <i>v.</i> 设计	designer <i>n.</i> 设计师
<u>harm</u> <i>v.</i> 伤害, 损害	harmful <i>adj.</i> 有害的, 导致损害的
	harmless <i>adj.</i> 无害的; 无恶意的
<u>agriculture</u> <i>n.</i> 农业	agricultural <i>adj.</i> 农业的, 耕种的; 农艺的, 农学的

III. 补全短语

1. from the bottom to the top 从下到上
2. turn... into... 把……变成……
3. plenty of 充足的, 相当多的
4. prevent... from... 阻挡, 防止; 使……免于……
5. wash away 冲走
6. in harmony with... 与……和谐相处
7. provide... for... 为……提供……
8. pass down 传下来; 传递
9. be home to 是……的故乡/发源地/所在地
10. go to the trouble to do... 费心做……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语  
Reaching as far as the eye can see, these terraces cover tall mountains, often from the bottom to the very top.  
目之所及, 这些梯田包裹着巍峨的高山, 往往从山脚一直盘绕到山顶。
2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语  
Building the terraces therefore meant that they could increase the areas in which they could grow rice.  
因此, 建造梯田意味着他们可以扩大水稻的种植面积。
3. 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句  
But perhaps what is most significant is the way in which people have worked in harmony with nature to make these terraces and grow rice.  
但也许最重要的还是人与自然和谐相处, 建造梯田并种植水稻的方式。

## 任务型课堂

## 1. prevent v. 阻挡, 防止

[教材原文] The flat terraces catch the rainwater and **prevent** the soil from being washed away.  
水平的梯田能够储存雨水, 防止土壤流失。

## [归纳拓展]

- (1) prevent/stop sb. (from) (doing) sth. 阻止某人(做)某事(在被动结构中, 介词 from 不可省略)  
keep sb. from (doing) sth. 阻止某人(做)某事  
(2) prevention *n.* 预防; 防止; 防范  
(3) preventable *adj.* 可以预防的; 可以阻止的

## 名师点拨

表示“阻止某人(做)某事”时, prevent/stop sb. (from) (doing) sth. 中的介词 from 可以省略, 但 keep sb. from (doing) sth. 中的 from 不能省略。在被动结构中, 以上短语中的 from 均不可省略。

## [即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① Pollution prevents people from seeing (see) objects in the sky that they could see quite easily in the past.  
② The situation in that country should be prevented (prevent) from becoming worse and worse.  
③ The firemen arrived quickly, and the fire was prevented from spreading.  
④ Most of the mistakes in his test paper are preventable (prevent) if he is more careful.  
⑤ Law is made to punish crimes with an eye on prevention (prevent).

## 2. design v. 设计

[教材原文] The terraces are cleverly **designed**, with hundreds of waterways that connect with each other.

这些梯田设计巧妙, 其间有几百条相互连通的水渠。

## [归纳拓展]

- (1) be designed for 为……而设计

be designed to do sth. 目的是/计划做某事

be designed by... 由……设计

(2) by design 故意地, 蓄意地 (= on purpose)

(3) designer *n.* 设计师

## 名师点拨

design 还可用作名词, 意为“设计; 图案; 意图”。

## [即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① This entrance has been specially designed for people in wheelchairs.  
② The project is designed to help (help) those children who drop out of school because of poverty.  
③ We don't know whether it was done by accident or by design.

## 3. harm v. 伤害, 损害

[教材原文] These terraces also provide a perfect environment for birds and fish, some of which feed on insects that can **harm** the rice crops.

这些梯田也为鸟类和鱼类提供了完美的环境, 其中一些以危害水稻的昆虫为食。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) do... harm/do harm to... 对……有害

there is no harm in doing sth. 做某事无害处; 不妨做某事

(2) harmful *adj.* 有害的; 导致损害的

be harmful to... 对……有害处

(3) harmless *adj.* 无害的; 无恶意的

## [即学即练]

单句语法填空

- ① Don't read in the sun because it does harm to your eyes.  
② There is no harm in saying (say) sorry to your friend first if you two have quarrelled.  
③ Some experts say that music can be harmful (harm) if it is too loud.  
④ Eating too much sugar is harmful to children's teeth.

## 多义词汇专练

## 1. sheet

- A. *n.* 一层                      B. *n.* 一张(纸)                      C. *n.* 床单

① Each **sheet** was covered with small, neat handwriting.

②A **sheet** of frost covered the windows of the car.

③ His mother walked into his bedroom and asked whether he changed the **sheet**.

B

A

C

**2.** It is only **shallow** people who judge others by appearances.

- A. *adj.* 浅的                      B. *adj.* 肤浅的                      C. *adj.* 弱的

B

### 课后素养评价(二十七)

## I. 单词拼写

1. They built a wall to stop soil (土壤) being washed away.
2. It's likely that they will be harmed (伤害) by second-hand smoke.
3. We congratulated them on the successful completion (完成) of the project.
4. The region (地区) is said to produce over 50% of the country's rice.
5. The lake over there was covered with a sheet (一大片) of ice.
6. Diana is taking the opportunity to wrap (包) up the family presents.
7. Put the milk in a shallow (浅的) dish.
8. Problems also exist in agriculture (农业).
9. It rained and therefore (因此) the football match was postponed.
10. This project is designed (设计) to help homeless people.
11. In the Ming and Qing dynasties (朝代), it had grown to be a major festival in China.
12. The heavy rain which lasted for a week did a lot of damage (损害) to the crops (庄稼).

## II. 短语填空

in harmony with; be home to; turn...  
into...; prevent... from...; wash away;  
provide... for...; pass down

1. Everything that King Midas touched turned into gold.
2. This large woodland (林地) is home to many birds and other wildlife.
3. This custom has been passed down since the Ming Dynasty.

4. These rules could prevent accidents from happening.
5. They worked hard to provide money for their large family.
6. To live a happy life, we should be in harmony with nature.
7. As is known to all, trees can prevent the earth from being washed away.

### III. 完成句子

1. Standing by the window, you can have a good view.  
站在窗户旁边,你可以看到很好的景色。
2. Three quarters of the land is covered with green grass.  
四分之三的土地被绿草所覆盖。
3. He went to a lot of trouble to find the book for me and I felt grateful for him.  
他不辞劳苦把这本书给我找到了,我对他心存感激。
4. There are plenty of restaurants to choose from.  
有许多餐馆可供选择。

#### IV. 完形填空

Dino Impagliazzo cuts onions like a professional 1. The Italian man makes a great vegetable soup, 2 most of his longtime “customers” can’t even pay for a piece of bread. Working with a much younger man, the 90-year-old Impagliazzo is known as Rom’s “chef of the 3”.

Three days a week, he sets out to gather 4  
with other volunteers. They are all part of  
RomAmoR (RomeLove), a group that he started.  
The 5 go to markets and bakeries to collect  
6 food. The other four days of the week,

RomAmoR volunteers cook food and 7 it in different places across the city. Such efforts help Impagliazzo 8 his dream of feeding the homeless.

It all 9 15 years ago when a homeless man at a Rome train station asked Impagliazzo for 10 to buy a sandwich. “I realised that perhaps 11 buying one sandwich, making some sandwiches for him and for the friends who were there would be better, and thus began our adventure,” he said.

He launched (开始从事) his work to 12 the needy with other retired people. Now there are more than 300 volunteers, both young and old. Impagliazzo recently received a(n) 13 from Italian President. He was recognised as a “hero of our times”. He never 14 his idea would become so 15.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了意大利一位90岁高龄的老人Dino Impagliazzo给那些无家可归的人提供食物的爱心故事。

1. A. teacher B. singer  
C. cook D. farmer

C 根据上文的“cuts onions”和下文的“makes a great vegetable soup”可知,Dino Impagliazzo就像一名专业的厨师(cook)。

2. A. though B. but  
C. so D. when

B 这位意大利男子做的蔬菜汤很棒,但是(but)他的大部分长期“顾客”甚至无法付钱买一块面包。

3. A. poor B. old  
C. rich D. young

A 根据下文“his dream of feeding the homeless”可知,Dino Impagliazzo帮助的是无家可归的人,所以他是“穷人(poor)的厨师”。

4. A. clothes B. children  
C. money D. food

D 根据下文“RomAmoR volunteers cook food”可知,Dino Impagliazzo和其他的志愿者们收集食物(food)。

5. A. cooks B. friends  
C. volunteers D. managers

C 根据上文“with other volunteers”可知,志愿者(volunteers)去市场和面包店收集捐赠的食物。

6. A. frozen B. donated

- C. fast D. canned

B 根据空前的动词“collect”可知,志愿者去市场和面包店收集捐赠的(donated)食物。

7. A. offer B. gather  
C. sell D. throw

A 根据下文的“his dream of feeding the homeless”可知,这些食物是提供(offer)给无家可归的人的。

8. A. put forward B. see to  
C. take over D. live out

D 根据下文“his dream of feeding the homeless”可知,这些努力帮助 Impagliazzo 实现了(live out)为无家可归者提供食物的梦想。

9. A. arrived B. predicted  
C. began D. appeared

C 根据下文的“15 years ago”可知,Impagliazzo 助人为乐这件事是15年前开始(began)的。

10. A. permission B. money  
C. advice D. time

B 根据空后的“to buy a sandwich”可知,这个无家可归的人是向 Impagliazzo 要钱(money)来买三明治。

11. A. instead of B. because of  
C. in case of D. for lack of

A 根据上文“his dream of feeding the homeless”可知,他希望为无家可归的人做三明治而不是(instead of)买三明治。

12. A. inspire B. protect  
C. feed D. save

C 根据上文“his dream of feeding the homeless”可知,他和其他退休的人一起为那些穷人提供食物(feed)。

13. A. award B. permit  
C. cup D. menu

A 根据下文的“He was recognised as a ‘hero of our times’.”可知,Impagliazzo 的事迹得到了意大利总统的表彰(award)。

14. A. promised B. agreed  
C. admitted D. thought

D 他从未想到(thought)过,他的想法会成功。

15. A. impressive B. lovable  
C. successful D. colourful

C 根据上文“Now there are more than 300 volunteers”和“He was recognised as a ‘hero of our times’.”可知,他没有想到会如此成功(successful)。

Section III Using language

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. All the furniture is made of natural **materials**.  
材料
2. **Minerals** are often found deep in the ground.  
矿物, 矿产
3. What is the biggest **barrier** to women succeeding at work?  
障碍
4. Doctors study the **structure** of the human body.  
结构, 构造, 组织
5. Other **living** beings might exist in outer space.  
活的, 活着的
6. Very few animals can survive in this terrible **climate**.  
气候
7. They lost their way in the **desert** and finally died of thirst.  
沙漠

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>replace</u> v. 以……替换, 更换	<u>replacement</u> n. 替换, 更换; 替代品, 替换物
<u>consumer</u> n. 消费者	<u>consume</u> v. 消耗, 耗费(燃料、能量、时间等)
	<u>consumption</u> n. 消费; 消耗, 消耗量
<u>priority</u> n. 优先处理的事, 当务之急	<u>prior</u> adj. 优先的; 占先的; 较重要的
<u>beauty</u> n. 美, 美丽	<u>beautify</u> v. 美化; 装饰
	<u>beautiful</u> adj. 美丽的, 漂亮的
<u>thunder</u> v. 打雷 n. 雷声	<u>thunderous</u> adj. 雷鸣般的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>sail</u> v. (乘船)航行	<u>sailor</u> n. 水手, 海员; 驾船人
	<u>sailing</u> n. 帆船运动; (乘帆船的)航行; (轮船的)航班

III. 补全短语

1. be made from 由……制成(看不出原料)
2. be popular with 受……欢迎
3. separate... from... 使……和……分离, 把……和……分开

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作定语  
Located off the coast of Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is the biggest structure made by living organisms.  
大堡礁位于澳大利亚海岸附近, 是由活的生物体构成的最大结构。
2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语  
Eating a lot of fish and meat keeps our bodies strong so that we can fight the cold.  
吃大量的鱼和肉可以使我们的身体强壮, 从而可以抵御寒冷。
3. 句型公式: make+it+adj.+for sb. to do sth.  
The cold weather makes it difficult for us to grow enough vegetables and fruit.  
寒冷的天气使我们很难种植足够的蔬菜和水果。

任务型课堂

**replace v. 以……替换, 更换**

[教材原文] In sentence (a), can we **replace** “in which” with “where” without changing the meaning?

在(a)句中, 我们能否在不改变含义的情况下将“in which”替换为“where”?

[归纳拓展]

replace... with... 用……代替……

replace sb. as... 取代某人成为……

replace sb./sth. = take the place of sb./sth. = take one's place 取代某人/某物

## [即学即练]

## (1) 单句语法填空

① Despite the fast development of AI technology, teachers will never be replaced (replace) by computers in the classroom.

② It's a bad idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks.

③ Who will replace Mr Smith as the manager of the department?

## (2) 句型转换

No one can replace her father in her heart.

→ No one can take the place of her father in her heart.

## • 多义词汇专练

## narrow

A. *adj.* 狭窄的

B. *adj.* 勉强的

C. *v.* (使)变窄

① They planned to **narrow** the gap between the rich and the poor.

C

② She was elected by a **narrow** majority.

B

③ The approach to the house is a **narrow** path.

A

## 语法探究

## “介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句

## 「语法感知」

① These terraces were built by the local Zhuang and Yao people, **to whom** Guangxi is home.

② Building the terraces therefore meant that they could increase the areas **in which** they could grow rice.

③ But perhaps what is most significant is the way **in which** people have worked in harmony with nature to make these terraces and grow rice.

④ This forms clouds **from which** rain falls down onto the mountain terraces once again.

⑤ These terraces also provide a perfect environment for birds and fish, **some of which** feed on insects that can harm the rice crops.

⑥ Although modern technology could help produce more crops, these terraces still mean a lot to the local people **for whom** traditions hold much value.

1. 以上 6 个句子都使用了“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句。若先行词指物,那么介词后的关系代词用 which;若先行词指人,那么介词后的关系代词用 whom。

2. 以上 6 个句子中,句②③④⑥是限制性定语从句,句①⑤是非限制性定语从句。

## 「语法精讲」

## 一、基本构成

在“介词+关系代词”结构引导的定语从句中,关

系代词指物用 which,指人用 whom,不可用 that 或 who 代替。

There comes Tom, **for whom** I have been waiting an hour or so.

汤姆来了,我等了大约一个小时。

He handed me a pen **with which** I wrote down his phone number.

他递给我一支钢笔,我用它记下了他的电话号码。

The university **in which** my brother once studied is very famous.

我哥哥曾经就读的大学很有名。

## 二、介词不能提前的情况

有些固定动词短语中的介词一般不能提前。常见的这类动词短语有 listen to, look at, depend on, look for, pay attention to, take care of, look after, take part in, call on, catch up with, get along with, hear of, look forward to 等。

This must be the key **that** she is **looking for**.

这一定是她正在寻找的那把钥匙。

This is the baby **whom** you will **look after**.

这就是你将要照看的那个婴儿。

We often talk about the people and the things **that** we **heard of**.

我们经常谈论我们听说的人和事。

## 三、“介词+关系代词”的拓展

## 1. 复合介词+关系代词

用于该结构的关系代词有 which, whom 和



whose。常用的复合介词有 because of, in front of, as a result of, at the back of 等。

He was badly hurt in the accident, **because of which** he didn't go to work.

他在事故中严重受伤,因为这个他没去上班。

They arrived at a farmhouse, **in front of which** sat a boy.

他们来到一座农舍,农舍前面坐着一个男孩。

## 2. 表示部分或整体概念的“代词+of+关系代词”

表示部分与整体概念的代词有 both, all, neither, none, either, some, any, most, few, one, half 等。

He has lots of hobbies, **one of which** is swimming.

他有很多爱好,其中之一是游泳。

The old man has three sons, **all of whom** care about him.

那位老人有3个儿子,他们都很关心他。

## 3. the+名词+of+关系代词

此结构用来代替“whose+名词”,也可用“of which the+名词”。

They do experiments in a lab, **the windows of which/of which the windows/whose windows** face south.

他们在一个窗户朝南的实验室里做实验。

I will talk to those students **the homework of whom/whose homework/of whom the homework** hasn't been done.

我要和没完成作业的学生谈话。

## 4. 关系副词 when, where, why 可用“介词+which”来代替

I often think of the moment **when** (= **at which**) I saw the sea.

我常常想起我看见大海的那一刻。

The police searched the house **where** (= **in which**) the thief had stayed.

警察搜查了那个小偷曾经待过的房子。

I don't know the reason **why** (= **for which**) he performed so badly.

我不知道他为什么表现得如此差。

## 四、the way 后的定语从句的关系词

way 表示“方法,方式”时,其后的定语从句有两种情况:

### 1. the way 的关系词在定语从句中作主语或宾语时,用 that 和 which 均可,作宾语时可省略。

The way (**that/which**) he thought of to prevent

the air pollution was very good.

他想出的防止空气污染的方法非常好。(关系词代替 the way 在定语从句中作 thought of 的宾语)

### 2. the way 的关系词在定语从句中作方式状语时,用 that 或 in which 均可,现代英语倾向于省略关系词。

I don't like the way (**that/in which**) you speak to your mother.

我不喜欢你同你母亲说话的方式。

## 「语法冲关」

### I. 用“介词+关系代词”填空

- English is a language shared by several diverse cultures, each of which uses it differently.
- Wind power is an ancient source of energy to which we may return in the near future.
- This is the man from whom I learned a lot in my life.
- The woman with whom you shook hands just now is head of our company.
- Can you tell me the reason for which you were late again?
- He built a telescope through which he could study the stars.

### II. 用含有“介词+关系代词”的定语从句合并下列句子

- This is a field. I used to grow vegetables in that field.  
→ This is a field in which I used to grow vegetables.
- This is my English teacher. I've learned a lot from her.  
→ This is my English teacher from whom I've learned a lot.
- The day will come. Ordinary people can travel by spaceship on the day.  
→ The day on which ordinary people can travel by spaceship will come.
- The newly-built café is really a peaceful place for us. The walls of it are painted light green.  
→ The newly-built café of which the walls are painted light green is really a peaceful place for us.

## 课后素养评价(二十八)

### I. 词语填空

basin; desert; barrier; material; mineral; climate;  
(be) famous for; inside; be located in; priority

1. This area of France has a pleasing climate in August so it's the best time to visit it.
2. It's raining. We'll have to go inside.
3. According to the report, two thirds of the country is desert.
4. Our first stop was Kunming, a city famous for its beautiful scenery and mild (温和的) temperature.
5. When this museum opened, it was located in the centre of town.
6. His novels are a rich source of material for the movie industry.
7. Women are more likely to give priority to child care and education.
8. When I told them I was thirsty, they went and got me a bottle of mineral water.
9. The Turban Basin in Xinjiang is the world's lowest-lying one, the lowest point being 154 metres below sea level.
10. His rich experience in other parts of Asia helped him to overcome cultural barriers.

### II. 单句语法填空

1. Words cannot describe the beauty (beautiful) of the scene.
2. There are several main reasons why old buildings should be pulled down and replaced (replace) by new ones.
3. During this period, the team should be well structured (structure).
4. The house in which he once lived now becomes a shop.
5. The man narrowly (narrow) escaped death when a fire broke out in his home this morning.
6. A consumer (consume) is a person who buys things or uses services.
7. The pen with which he is writing is mine.
8. Father never talked about what he did for a living (live).
9. They warned him of the dangers of sailing (sail) alone.

10. I would like to explain the reason for which I was absent.

### III. 阅读理解

#### A

Have you imagined that planting trees can make a big difference? People say that one man can't make a difference, but Abdul Samad Sheikh, a 60-year-old rickshaw (人力车) driver from Bangladesh, has proved that doing a small thing over a long period of time can mean very much. He has planted at least one tree every day since he was 12 years old, which means that he has so far planted a small forest of over 17,500 trees. Imagine if everyone followed his example.

Abdul has worked as a rickshaw driver for most of his life. He makes a little money from his job, which is only enough to put food on the table for his family, but he somehow tries to also buy at least one tree every day. He considers it his duty to the world. Mostly he plants them on government land so nobody can cut them down later. He also waters them, and if he sees anyone cutting a tree, he blames them.

Abdul, his wife Jorna, and four of their children live in two old houses, on a piece of land that is owned by the Faridpur deputy commissioner's office. They have no land of their own.

Sometimes, she commands him not to plant trees but he doesn't listen. Abdul's 30-year-old son, Kutub Uddin, has never told his father not to plant trees, because he thinks his father does a good thing for society.

Abdul's neighbours all know about his daily habit, and praise his work. Whoever can ask of him anything, he will do his best to help. Therefore, Abdul is loved by neighbours.

For his efforts, Abdul Samad Sheikh was recently honoured by *The Daily Star*, and given \$1,253 to help him build a better home for his family. *The Daily Star* wished everyone to follow

his example, and protect the environment.

“I can’t do it alone. I need the help of you all,” Abdul said in his speech.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 60 岁的孟加拉国人力车夫 Abdul 每天用自己的钱至少种一棵树的故事,号召更多的人向他学习,保护环境。

1. What do we know about Abdul?

- A. He doesn’t support his family.
- B. He plants trees with his own money.
- C. He makes a living by doing different jobs.
- D. He plants trees to win his neighbours’ praise.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“He makes a little money from his job, ... but he somehow tries to also buy at least one tree every day.”可知, Abdul 工作挣的钱很少,但他还是设法每天至少买一棵树,因此 Abdul 是用自己的钱种树。故选 B。

2. Why does Abdul plant trees on government land?

- A. To get money from government.
- B. To set a good example to people.
- C. To protect them from being cut down.
- D. To get a place from government to build his own house.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Mostly he plants them on government land so nobody can cut them down later.”可知, Abdul 把树种植在政府的土地上,这样以后就没人能把它们砍倒了。由此可推知, Abdul 这样做是为了保护树免遭砍伐。故选 C。

3. Which of the following can best describe Abdul?

- A. Poor but helpful.
- B. Rich and reliable.
- C. Uncaring and stupid.
- D. Active but dishonest.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“He makes a little money from his job”及第三段中的“They have no land of their own.”可知, Abdul 挣的钱很少,并且没有自己的土地,因此他很穷;根据第五段中的“Whoever can ask of him anything, he will do his best to help. Therefore, Abdul is loved by neighbours.”可知, Abdul 乐于助人,深受邻居们喜欢。由此可知, Abdul 是个贫穷但乐于助人的人。故选 A。

4. What does the underlined word “it” in the last paragraph refer to?

- A. Driving a rickshaw.

B. Planting trees.

C. Making big money.

D. Building a better home.

B 代词指代题。根据第一段提到的“he has so far planted a small forest of over 17,500 trees”可知,到目前为止, Abdul 已经种了 17 500 多棵树;根据倒数第二段中的“*The Daily Star* wished everyone to follow his example, and protect the environment.”可知,《每日星报》希望每个人都以他为榜样,保护环境。由此可知, Abdul 说的“I can’t do it alone. I need the help of you all”指的是种树不能只靠他自己的力量,需要更多人参与。故画线词“it”指 planting trees。故选 B。

## B

Jace Tunnell, the founder of Nurdle Patrol and Reserve Director at the University of Texas Marine Science Institute, is listening to the same question often.

“I hear every day, somebody says, ‘What is a nurdle?’” he said.

Tunnell explained nurdles are tiny balls of plastic that are typically used to make almost every plastic item we use, so they’re everywhere! He said nurdles are usually spilled (溢出) during transport from cargo ships or railroad cars. “These things would be out here for hundreds of years if we’re not picking them up,” Tunnell said while on a recent Nurdle Patrol cleanup along Galveston Bay.

Since 2018, Nurdle Patrol has grown to thousands of volunteers worldwide. Many people volunteer with Nurdle Patrol and work for the Galveston Bay Foundation. Nurdle Patrol groups upload their findings to the nonprofit’s website map. It’s marked in colours to show where the highest concentration of nurdles is found.

“They look natural, and birds think that they’re food,” Tunnell said. “Birds, fish, sea turtles and other sea animals can eat nurdles and finally die from hunger because of a false sensation of fullness and lack of nutrition.”

“I ended up finding 123 nurdles in 10 minutes. That’s high concentration,” Tunnell said about a recent cleanup. “I plan to take those to an elected official and say, ‘Look, these are what I found on our beaches here. We need to do something about

this.' So, it kind of puts in motion change that can happen."

Nurdle Patrol has sent out hundreds of kits (工具包) globally, many to schools and volunteer organisations, with information about gathering nurdles and reporting the findings safely. Anyone can request a kit through their website.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了 Jace Tunnell 创立了 Nurdle Patrol 组织,致力于清理海洋中的小塑料球。

5. What do we know about the nurdle?

- A. It is easily broken down.
- B. It is a small piece of plastic.
- C. It was invented by Tunnell.
- D. It is mainly used to make ships.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的 "Tunnell explained nurdles are tiny balls of plastic that are typically used to make almost every plastic item we use, so they're everywhere!" 可知, nurdle 是小塑料球。故选 B。

6. What do Tunnell's words in Paragraph 5 mainly stress?

- A. The unique look of nurdles.
- B. The number of nurdles in the sea.
- C. Nurdles' harm to sea animals' food.
- D. Nurdles' impact on sea animals.

D 推理判断题。根据第五段 " 'They look natural, and birds think that they're food,' Tunnell said. 'Birds, fish, sea turtles and other sea animals can eat nurdles and finally die from hunger because of a false sensation of fullness and lack of nutrition.' " 可推知, Tunnell 在第五段主要强调了小塑料球对海洋动物的影响。故选 D。

7. What does Tunnell want to do?

- A. Draw a map of nurdles' concentration.
- B. Call the government's attention to nurdles.
- C. Organise more cleanups along the beaches.
- D. Share his findings on Nurdle Patrol's website.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的 "I plan to take those to an elected official and say, 'Look, these are what I found on our beaches here. We need to do something about this.' So, it kind of puts in motion change that can happen." 可知, Tunnell 想唤起政府对小塑料球的注意。故选 B。

8. What is the best title for the text?

- A. A Group Surveys the Level of Pollution in the Sea
- B. A Group Takes Action to Reduce the Use of Plastics
- C. A Group Tries to Deal with Pollutants Harming Wildlife
- D. A Group Looks for Volunteers for Its Beach Cleanups

C 标题归纳题。根据第四段 "Since 2018, Nurdle Patrol has grown to thousands of volunteers worldwide. Many people volunteer with Nurdle Patrol and work for the Galveston Bay Foundation. Nurdle Patrol groups upload their findings to the nonprofit's website map. It's marked in colours to show where the highest concentration of nurdles is found." 并结合文章主要介绍了 Jace Tunnell 创立了 Nurdle Patrol 组织,致力于清理海洋中的小塑料球可知, C 选项 "一个团队试图处理危害野生动物的污染物" 最适合作为文章标题。故选 C。

#### IV. 完形填空

Brad was surprised when his 92-year-old grandmother Joy told him she'd never seen a mountain in person. He knew she was 1 fond of nature. "I wanted to be able to offer an opportunity for my grandmother to see the 2," Brad said. So he asked Joy if she would be interested in a road trip. Her 3 was, "What time will you 4 up your grandmother?"

In October, they 5, driving through the night. Once they 6 the national park, "she not only saw mountains, but she 7 mountains with me," said Brad. "Even when the rain was pouring down, she was 8." Before their 9, Brad was struggling with his mental health. "I was trying to do something to help her, but she ended up 10 me in the process," he said.

"We were very 11 throughout my childhood," he recalled, saying he had 12 memories of catching frogs with her. "I think my love of animals came from her," Brad said. "What would be a typical grandson-grandparent relationship 13 the closest friendship I could ever imagine."

"I'm always willing to try something 14,"

said Joy. With Brad by her side, she said she feels safe. “He just makes my 15 sing. I wish all Grandmas had Grandsons like him.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了 Brad 听说自己的祖母 Joy 从未亲眼看到过大山,于是决定带着祖母一起自驾游。通过这次旅行,Brad 和 Joy 有了更亲密的关系。

1. A. luckily B. deeply  
C. secretly D. reasonably

B 根据上文“Brad was surprised when his 92-year-old grandmother Joy told him she'd never seen a mountain in person.”可知,Joy 非常喜欢大自然,当 Brad 得知她并未亲眼看到过大山时,非常惊讶。故选 B。

2. A. park B. rain  
C. mountain D. grandson

C 空处为原词重现,根据上文“Brad was surprised when his 92-year-old grandmother Joy told him she'd never seen a mountain in person.”可知,Brad 想带他的祖母看大山。故选 C。

3. A. problem B. doubt  
C. confusion D. response

D 根据上文“So he asked Joy if she would be interested in a road trip.”可知,Brad 询问祖母是否对自驾游感兴趣,由此推断,空处指的是祖母的回复。故选 D。

4. A. pick B. bring  
C. wake D. dress

A pick up sb.意为“接某人”,表达了 Joy 对 Brad 询问的肯定。故选 A。

5. A. took off B. gave up  
C. set off D. ran away

C 根据下文“driving through the night”可知,祖孙二人在夜里就出发了。故选 C。

6. A. found B. reached  
C. chose D. checked

B 根据下文“she not only saw mountains, but she 7 mountains with me”可知,他们到达了国家公园。故选 B。

7. A. climbed B. cleaned  
C. drew D. burnt

A 根据“mountains”可知,Joy 和 Brad 一起爬山。故选 A。

8. A. smiling B. shouting  
C. dancing D. falling

A 根据下文“Brad was struggling with his mental health. ‘I was trying to do something to help her, but she ended up 10 me in the process,’ he said.”可知,Brad 本来精神健康不佳,而祖母却治愈了 Brad。由此推断,Joy 是一个积极向上的人,所以即便下雨,她也会微笑。故选 A。

9. A. chat B. performance  
C. escape D. trip

D 根据上文“So he asked Joy if she would be interested in a road trip.”可知,空处为原词重现,指的是这次旅行之前。故选 D。

10. A. raising B. annoying  
C. saving D. forgiving

C 根据上文“I was trying to do something to help her”可知,Brad 本希望做些事情帮助 Joy,可是 Joy 积极向上的心态却治愈了自己。故选 C。

11. A. dull B. close  
C. poor D. hungry

B 根据下文“saying he had 12 memories of catching frogs with her”可知,Brad 幼时和自己的祖母非常亲密。故选 B。

12. A. painful B. clear  
C. terrible D. broken

B 根据下文“‘I think my love of animals came from her,’ Brad said.”可知,幼时和祖母一起抓青蛙的记忆非常清晰。故选 B。

13. A. ran into B. came cross  
C. held back D. turned into

D 根据上文“a typical grandson-grandparent relationship”可知,这种祖孙关系转变成了友谊。故选 D。

14. A. different B. common  
C. expensive D. dangerous

A 根据上文“Brad was surprised when his 92-year-old grandmother Joy told him she'd never seen a mountain in person.”可知,Joy 从未亲眼看到过大山,而她积极回应了 Brad 的提议,由此可知,Joy 喜欢尝试不同的东西。故选 A。

15. A. voice B. family  
C. friend D. heart

D 根据下文“I wish all Grandmas had Grandsons like him.”可知,Joy 很喜欢孙子 Brad 陪伴在身边,所以她认为孙子在身边时,心也会跟着雀跃。故选 D。



## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

### 自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. publish *v.* 出版
2. expert *adj.* 内行的, 专家的
3. branch *n.* 树枝
4. rent *v.* 租用, 租借
5. limited *adj.* 有限的
6. benefit *n.* 好处, 益处
7. energy *n.* 力量, 活力
8. system *n.* 系统
9. lead to 导致, 引起
10. allow... to do 允许……做……
11. be in doubt 怀疑, 有疑问

12. reflect on 考虑, 反思

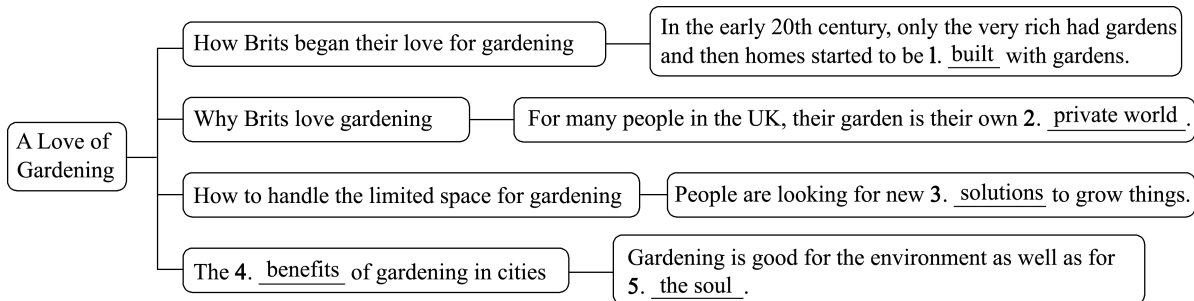
(二) 阅读词汇

1. pleasant *adj.* 令人愉快的
2. rooftop *n.* 屋顶
3. thistle *n.* 蓟
4. herb *n.* (用于调味) 香草
5. sunflower *n.* 向日葵
6. flavour *n.* 味, 味道
7. green fingers 高超的种植技能
8. free-time activity 业余活动
9. be at one with 与……融为一体
10. enter into a competition 参加比赛

### 多维化析文

#### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



#### 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why does the author use the words of *The Secret Garden*?  
A. Because the author loves the sentences.  
B. Because the author wants to introduce the topic.  
C. Because the author is mentioning facts that are obvious to the readers.  
D. Because the author is not certain about the words.  
答案: B

2. What does the phrase “green fingers” mean according to the text?  
A. Real fingers.  
B. The ability to make plants grow.  
C. Green homes.  
D. Grass.  
答案: B
3. What are the advantages of gardens?  
A. They make cities greener.  
B. They improve air quality.  
C. They are good for the soul.  
D. All the above.  
答案: D



## 语言知识运用

## Activity 3: Fill in the blanks according to the text

"If you look the right way, you can see that the whole world is 1. a garden." These words come from the book *The Secret Garden*, first 2. published (publish) in 1911. At that time, only the very rich in Britain 3. had (have) gardens. However, today, 4. millions (million) of Brits like to say that they have "green fingers", with around half the population 5. spending (spend) most of their free time gardening. Those without outside space can rent small pieces of land 6. to grow (grow) things. Today, there 7. are (be) over 4,000 people in London 8. who/that are waiting for such pieces of land. One recent idea has been to turn rooftops and walls into private gardens. These gardens have helped make the cities 9. greener (green) and improve air quality. As well as being good 10. for the environment, gardening benefits the soul.

## Activity 4: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Today, millions of Brits like to say that they have "green fingers", with around half the population spending their free time gardening.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。that 引导宾语从句;with 复合结构的宾语是 around half the population, 宾语补足语是 spending their free time gardening。

[尝试翻译]如今,数以百万的英国人喜欢说他们有“绿手指”,约有一半的英国人都把空闲时间用在打理花园上。

2. And while many Brits like nothing better than spending their Sunday cutting the grass, some

are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them.

[句子分析]本句是主从复合句。while 引导让步状语从句;nothing better than...为“否定词+比较级”表示最高级含义。

[尝试翻译]虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪,但有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。

3. And if you're in any doubt about this, take a moment to reflect on this line from *The Secret Garden*: "Where you tend a rose... A thistle cannot grow."

[句子分析]本句为主从复合句。if 引导条件状语从句;主句是以 take 开头的祈使句;在引用的句子中 Where 引导地点状语从句。

[尝试翻译]如果你对这一点有任何疑问,请停下片刻,回味一下《秘密花园》中的这句话:“当你种下玫瑰……蓟草就不会生长。”

## 思维品质培养

## Activity 5: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why does gardening do good to cities?  
Because it can help make cities greener and improve air quality.
2. What is the similarity between gardening and body building exercise?  
They are both good for physical and psychological health.
3. Do you like gardening? Why or why not?  
Yes, I like gardening. Because when I spend my free time gardening, my heart is calm and I am relaxed.

## 课后素养评价(二十九)

## I. 单词拼写

1. A system (系统) is a way of working, organising, or doing something which follows a fixed plan or set of rules.
2. Rice cake can be made into various other flavours

(味道).

3. The young men are expert (内行的) at driving racing cars.
4. Whenever he took a walk outside, he felt bright and cheerful and full of energy (活力).

5. I bought a pleasant (令人愉快的) little apartment when I arrived in England.
6. I couldn't see the benefit (好处) of arguing with him any longer.
7. Cars are allowed, but parking is limited (有限的).
8. We rented (租下) a car to get around the island and had a good time there.
9. I don't think that branch (树枝) will hold your weight.
10. They managed to have a book and an article published (出版).

## II. 短语填空

reflect on; lead to; at one with; be in doubt; keep an eye out for

1. There were only five minutes left in the game, but the ending was still in doubt.
2. The strike had already led to cuts in electricity and water supplies (供应) in many areas.
3. The scientist kept/keeps an eye out for some unknown plants in this village.
4. The start of a new year is a good time to reflect on the many achievements of the past.
5. Here in the mountains I feel totally at one with nature.

## III. 完成句子

1. London is a huge financial marketplace as well as an important political centre.  
伦敦是一个巨大的金融市场,也是一个重要的政治中心。
2. I'd like nothing better than to go to the barbecue with you.  
没有比和你一起去烧烤更好的了。
3. The Palace Museum, also called the Forbidden City, was completed in 1420.  
故宫博物院,也被称为紫禁城,于 1420 年建造完成。

## IV. 七选五

Clownfish like to live in coral reefs, but they don't spend their whole lives there. In the first few months after they are born, they "wander" in the open sea. When the baby clownfish grow big enough

to swim, they hurry home. They can't see the reef, however. 1

But humans—and their ships, speedboats, energy exploration platforms and even surfing—have made the ocean an unbearably noisy place. 2 In the case of baby clownfish, they make them unable to find their way home.

3 There are still many other sea animals depending on their ability to hear for their survival. They use sounds to sense their environment and to communicate. Dolphins call one another by unique names. Toadfish hum. Whales sing.

Many sea animals swim away from the noises.

4 But slow-moving animals like sea cucumbers (海参) are left helpless. In some places, human-made noises are everywhere. Animals have to permanently move away from these noises to quieter places. They are then forced to compete against others for the same pools of resources. Over time, their populations start to become smaller.

Luckily, the noise is a controllable pollutant. "We know exactly what causes the noise, we know where it is and we know how to stop it," said Steve Simpson, a biologist in England. 5 Wind-powered boats have been developed. Shipping routes can also be moved away from certain areas. Researchers are calling for stricter rules. "We have noise standards for cars and trucks," said Carlos Duarte, another biologist. "Why should we not have them for ships?"

- A. Clownfish are not the only ones to suffer.
- B. Many solutions to this problem already exist.
- C. Some animals could swim fast to catch food.
- D. These noises are often louder than the natural ones.
- E. Instead, they depend on the small noises that a reef lets out.
- F. Whales, for example, can learn to avoid busy shipping routes.
- G. Actually, the ocean has always been home to many clownfish.

答案: 1~5 ED AFB

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They cut away all the dead **branches** from the tree. 树枝
2. If you don't have enough money to buy a car, you can **rent** one instead. 租用, 租借
3. The **system** has been in operation for six months. 系统
4. When the house is burning, it is not safe to stay on the **rooftop**. 屋顶
5. The tomatoes added to the soup give extra **flavour** to it. 味, 味道

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>publish</u> v. 出版	<u>publisher</u> n. 出版人(或机构); 发行人(或机构)
<u>limited</u> adj. 有限的	<u>limit</u> v. 限制; 限定 n. 界限; 限度
	<u>limitless</u> adj. 无限制的, 无界限的
<u>benefit</u> n. 好处, 益处	<u>beneficial</u> adj. 有利的, 有用的
<u>energy</u> n. 力量, 活力	<u>energetic</u> adj. 精力充沛的, 充满活力的
<u>pleasant</u> adj. 令人愉快的	<u>please</u> v. 使高兴; 使欢喜; 使满意; 想, 选择; 喜欢
	<u>pleased</u> adj. 快乐的, 高兴的, 愉快的, 满意的

III. 补全短语

1. lead to 导致, 引起

2. enter into competitions 参加比赛
3. be at one with 与……融为一体
4. be in doubt 怀疑, 有疑问
5. reflect on 考虑, 反思
6. allow... to do 允许……做……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作定语

These words come from the author of the book *The Secret Garden*, first published in 1911. 这些话出自1911年首次出版的《秘密花园》一书的作者。

2. 句型公式: with 复合结构

Today, millions of Brits like to say that they have “green fingers”, with around half the population spending their free time gardening. 如今, 数以百万的英国人喜欢说他们有“绿手指”, 约有一半的英国人都把空闲时间用在打理花园上。

3. 句型公式: “否定词+比较级”表示最高级含义

And while many Brits like nothing better than spending their Sunday cutting the grass, some are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them. 虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪, 但也有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。

4. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作定语

Today, there are over 4,000 people in London waiting for such pieces of land. 现如今, 伦敦有四千多人在等待租用这样的土地。

任务型课堂

1. limited adj. 有限的

[教材原文] But in cities, **limited** space has led to people looking for new solutions. 但在城市里, 有限的空间促使人们寻找新的解决方案。

[归纳拓展]

- (1) be limited to 受限于……, 局限到……
- (2) limit v. 限制; 限定 n. 限制; (常作复数) 范围; 界限
- limit... to... 把……限定在……范围内

set a limit to... 对……限定范围  
within the limits of 在……范围内  
reach the limit 达到极限  
(3) limitless *adj.* 无限制的, 无界限的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He was born into a poor family, and only received a limited (limit) education in his childhood.

② You should try to limit your speech to five minutes.

③ They did well within the limits (limit) of their knowledge.

④ Scientists have known how to use the limitless (limit) power of the sun.

(2) 完成句子

The length of the article should be limited to 400 words or so.

文章的长度应该限制在 400 词左右。

2. benefit *n.* 好处, 益处

[教材原文] What are the **benefits** of gardening?

园艺有什么好处?

[归纳拓展]

(1) benefit sb./sth. 使某人或某物受益

benefit from... 从……中受益/获益

(2) for the benefit of 为了……的利益

be of benefit to (= be beneficial to) 有益于……;  
对……有好处

(3) beneficial *adj.* 有利的; 有益的; 受益的

[即学即练]

单句语法填空

① It can be beneficial (benefit) to share your feelings with someone you trust.

② It is said that yoga is of great benefit to health.

③ You can also revise the knowledge at the same time and you are sure to benefit from it.

④ China has been pushing the reform of public hospitals for the benefit of all its citizens.

3. “否定词+比较级”表示最高级含义

[教材原文] And while many Brits like **nothing better than** spending their Sunday cutting the grass, some are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them.

虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪, 但也有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。

[句式分析] 本句中 nothing better than 为“否定词+比较级”结构, 表示最高级的意思, 意为“非常……; 再没有比……更……的了”。常用的否定词有 no, not, never, nothing, nobody, hardly 等。

[归纳拓展]

表示最高级含义的常用比较级结构还有:

(1) 否定词+a+比较级+单数名词

(2) 比较级+than+any other+名词单数/all the other+复数名词/the others/anyone else

(3) 否定词+so/as+原级+as...

(4) 否定词+such+原级+名词

[即学即练]

(1) 完成句子

I have never heard a better voice than you.

我从未听到过比你的嗓音更好的了。

(2) 一句多译

他是我们班最高的男孩。

→ He is taller than any other boy in our class.

→ He is taller than all the other boys in our class.

多义词汇专练

His father's help enables him to found a new **branch** of the company.

A. *n.* 分部

B. *n.* 树枝

C. *n.* 支流

A

写作探究

概要写作

「写作指导」

本单元的写作任务为概要写作, 即基于所给短文

写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。概要写作的原文会以说明文或者议论文为主。具体写作要求: 在正确理解文章的基础上, 在不改变原文中心思想的前提下, 用

简明、精炼的语句高度浓缩文章的主要内容和观点。

- 1. 找关键词和主题句,准确理解、分析原文要点,归纳段落大意。
- 2. 各要点的表达要相对独立。
- 3. 各要点之间要有适当的衔接。
- 4. 句型力求简单,每句话要表意明确,无空泛、笼统之词。
- 5. 尽量使用短句,慎用长难句。例如,尽量少用关系代词 which, who 等引导的定语从句,而采用现在分词和过去分词作定语。
- 6. 多使用概括性词语,少用具体描述性词语。

「典题示例」

阅读短文,根据内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

It's a really good idea to visit colleges before you apply because their websites can all start to look and sound the same. Nothing will give you the sense of what it will actually be like to live on a college campus like visiting and seeing for yourself the dorms, classrooms and athletic equipment and, of course, the students. It seems a little crazy once senior year hits to find the time to visit college campus, and it can also be pricey if the schools you are applying to happen to be more than a car ride away. But keep in mind that you are making a decision about the next four years of your life, and do all the research you can to make sure you are making the right one.

There's no excuse not to visit the schools in your local area. In fact, a lot of college applications even ask if you have visited campus, and obviously, if you live across the country that won't be as much of a possibility, but if you live nearby, go check it out!

If campus visits aren't going to happen before you apply, at the very least you should find some time between applying and getting your acceptance letters to visit the schools you'd like to attend. It can save you a lot of heartache if you rule out now the things that you don't like about certain campuses, things that you wouldn't know unless you actually visit.

Now, if time and money are making it impossible, then check out the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive. It's a chance to chat online with admissions officers, students, and college counsellors (顾问), and it won't cost you a penny!

You can register for its online college fair at *collegeweeklive.com*. While visiting an online college fair can't take the place of an actual campus visit, it can be a very useful tool that along with all your other research will help you make an informed decision about which colleges or universities you'd like to attend.

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	议论文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	以第二人称为主
要点	1. 在你申请之前参观一下大学是个好主意 2. 没有理由不去参观你所在地区的学校 3. 你应该在申请和得到录取通知书之间找时间参观学校 4. 如果无法亲自参观,可以登录网站了解相关的信息

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①It is a wise choice (一个明智的选择) for you to visit the colleges you are applying to in person (亲自), especially the ones that are close to you (离你近的).
- ②You should at least visit the colleges (至少参观下这些大学) before getting your acceptance letters so that you can avoid being regretful (避免后悔).
- ③If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit (有很大益处的) to go to the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive.
- ④You can get necessary information (得到必要的信息) there.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①将 Step 2 中句②升级为 in order to 作目的状语的句子。  
In order to avoid being regretful, you should at least visit the colleges before getting your acceptance letters.
- ②将 Step 2 中句③和④合并为含有关系副词引导的定语从句的句子。  
If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit to go to the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive where you can get necessary information.



## Step 4: 连句成篇

It is a wise choice for you to visit the colleges you are applying to in person, especially the ones that are close to you. (要点 1) In order to avoid being regretful, you should at least visit the colleges before getting your acceptance letters. (要点 2) If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit to go to the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive where you can get necessary information. (要点 3)

## 「学以致用」

阅读短文, 根据内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

In our modern world, when something wears out, we throw it away and buy a new one. The problem is that countries around the world have growing mountains of rubbish because people are throwing out more rubbish than ever before.

How did we become a throwaway society? First of all, it is now easier to replace an object than to spend time and money to repair it. Thanks to modern manufacturing (制造业) and technology, companies are able to produce products quickly and inexpensively. Products are plentiful and cheap.

Another cause is our love of disposable (一次性的) products. As busy people, we are always looking for ways to save time and make our lives easier. Companies produce thousands of different kinds of disposable products: paper plates, plastic cups, and cameras, to name a few.

Our appetite for new products also contributes to the problem. We are addicted to buying new things. Advertisements persuade us that newer is better and that we will be happier with the latest products. The result is that we throw away useful possessions to make room for new ones.

All around the world, we can see the consequences of this throwaway lifestyle. Mountains of rubbish just keep getting bigger. To decrease the amount of rubbish and to protect the environment, more governments are requiring people to recycle materials. However, this is not enough to solve our problem.

Maybe there is another way out. We need to repair our possessions instead of throwing them away. We also need to rethink our attitudes about repairing. Repairing our possessions and changing our spending habits may be the best way to reduce the amount of rubbish and take care of our environment.

## 参考范文:

With more things thrown away, there is an increasing amount of rubbish worldwide. (要点 1) Some factors may account for this phenomenon. (要点 2) Firstly, compared to repairing, substituting an item is easier due to abundant and cheap goods available. (要点 3) Secondly, our performance for disposable and new products also worsens the problem. (要点 4) The solution lies in recycling materials, and fixing broken objects. But more importantly, we should change our consuming habits. (要点 5)

## 课后素养评价(三十)

## I. 单句语法填空

- There is no doubt that we will be successful.
- He offered a suggestion to improve (improve) the plan.
- Please reflect on your actions.
- Only a limited (limit) number of places are available.
- Indeed, it's not a pleasant (please) job but it has to be done.
- We benefited a lot from the man's expert advice.
- Keeping a proper balance between study and rest keeps us energetic (energy).
- Warmer and drier weather leads to dangerous fire conditions.

## II. 完成句子

- There are many countries in Asia, of which China is the largest one.  
亚洲有很多国家, 中国是其中最大的一个。
- Yesterday saw the death of the famous actor.  
昨天那位著名演员去世了。
- An article published in the newspaper points out that these free-time activities allow people to be at one with nature.  
该报发表的一篇文章指出, 这些空闲时间活动能让人们与大自然融为一体。
- The government should take measures immediately to prevent the pollution going from bad to worse.



政府应该立即采取措施防止污染进一步恶化。

5. Most workers think that no system is better than this system.

大多数工人认为这个计算机系统是最好的。

### III. 语法填空

In the last few years, environmental disasters 1. have become (become) more and more common. Terrible floods and storms are getting worse and worse everywhere and 2. reduced (reduce) rainfall brings about more severe droughts. Volcanic 3. eruptions (eruption) and earthquakes are often the case. Overpopulation is the main reason. 4. On top of that, global warming and the 5. destruction (destroy) of the world's forests contribute a lot to it. Of course, landslides and earthquakes have an important role 6. to play (play) in it. Homes built from 7. whatever materials that could be found can easily collapse during earthquakes or landslides, 8. especially (especial) after heavy rain. Most disaster experts believe, if we don't take immediate action, things could get 9. a lot worse. For example, we haven't seen the 10. worst (bad) result of eruption.

### IV. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,学校最近要组织一次英语演讲比赛,主题为“垃圾分类益处多”。请你根据该主题用英语写一篇演讲稿。要点如下:

1. 你的观点;
2. 你的建议。

参考词汇:垃圾分类 garbage classification

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;
3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

#### 参考范文:

Hello, everyone! I'm glad that I have this chance to share some ideas about garbage classification with you.

In my opinion, the earth is home to every individual, and it's our duty to protect the environment voluntarily. By sorting waste, we can not only reduce pollution but also conserve energy, paving the way for the recycling of valuable resources. For the sake of our environment and life, we expect that we can learn to sort rubbish and make it a habit. Every individual can make a difference and let's bring a brighter future for the planet!

Thank you!

### 第二节 概要写作

阅读短文,根据其内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

#### Elephants Can Tell

It is easy for us to tell our friends from our enemies. But can other animals do the same? Elephants can! They can use their sense of vision and smell to tell the difference between people who pose a threat and those who do not.

In Kenya, researchers found that elephants react differently to clothing worn by men of the Maasai and Kamba ethnic groups. Young Maasai men kill animals and thus pose a threat to elephants; Kamba men are mainly farmers and are not a danger to elephants.

In an experiment conducted by animal scientists, elephants were first presented with clean clothing or clothing that had been worn for five days by either a Maasai or a Kamba man. When the elephants recognised the smell of clothing worn by a Maasai man, they moved away from the smell faster and took longer to relax than when they recognised the smells of either clothing worn by a Kamba man or clothing that had not been worn at all.

Clothing colour also plays a role, though in a different way. In the same study, when the elephants saw red clothing not worn before, they reacted angrily, as red is typically worn by Maasai men. Rather than running away as they did with the smell, the elephants acted aggressively (攻击性地) towards the red clothing.

The researchers believe that the elephants' emotional reactions are because of their different understanding of the smells and the sights. Smelling a potential danger means that a threat is nearby and the best thing to do is run away and hide. Seeing a potential threat without its smell means that risk is low. Therefore, instead of showing fear and running away, the elephants express their anger and become aggressive.

#### 参考范文:

Studies have shown that elephants can use their sight and smell to distinguish between those who pose a threat and those who do not. In Kenya, researchers have found that elephants respond differently to clothing worn by Maasai and Kamba people. The colour of clothes also plays a role, though in a different way. The researchers believe that elephants' emotional response is due to their different interpretations of smells and sights.

## 阶段综合提升(三)

### Unit 5—Unit 6

#### I. 阅读理解

##### A

#### Welcome to Pocono Whitewater

There's something fun here at Pocono Whitewater for every level of adventurer! We have mild (柔和) to wild whitewater rafting (漂流), family trips, and birdwatching boating. Choose one adventure now. It's up to you! We have trips available daily. Give us a call today!

#### Dam Release Whitewater Rafting

Experience the best whitewater on the Lehigh River! Surrounded by forests and mountains, you will enjoy 12 miles and 5 hours of Class (等级) III whitewater rafting and outstanding scenery. This is a fun and thrilling (激动人心的) trip that everyone over the age of 12 can make. While paddling (划桨行进) in the swift water, you'll shout and laugh.

#### Dam Release Whitewater Rafting Rates:

★Individual (over the age of 12): \$ 61.00

★Group (at least 8 persons): \$ 31.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jackets, free parking, bus service to/from the river and professional river guides.

#### Family Style Whitewater Rafting

Bring along the whole family this summer and enjoy 8 miles and 5 hours of Class I whitewater rafting. Mild water of the Lehigh River is simply perfect for beginners, school groups, and kids aged 4 and older. This is just perfect for enjoying the passing scenery, kicking your feet over the edge of the raft, or taking a swim in the river!

One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)! Our workers will cook and serve you a picnic lunch—hotdogs, potato salad, fruit, etc. The classic family picnic!

#### Family Style Whitewater Rafting Rates:

★Adult: \$ 39.00

★Child (aged 4—14): \$ 33.00

★Group (at least 8 persons): \$ 30.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jackets, free parking, bus service to/from the river, and a barbeque lunch, river guides not

included.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了 Pocono Whitewater 提供的漂流等夏日休闲活动及其票价信息。

1. What can we infer from the passage?

A. The higher the class is, the milder the water is.

B. The lower the class is, the milder the water is.

C. The higher the class is, the safer the rafting is.

D. The lower the class is, the faster the rafting is.

B 推理判断题。根据 **Family Style Whitewater Rafting** 中的“Bring along the whole family this summer and enjoy 8 miles and 5 hours of Class I whitewater rafting. Mild water of the Lehigh River is simply perfect for beginners”可知,等级 I 的水流适合初学者,由此推知,等级越低,水流越柔和,故 B 项正确。

2. If 10 college students are to participate in the Dam Release Whitewater Rafting, how much money will be paid in total?

A. \$ 610.

B. \$ 330.

C. \$ 390.

D. \$ 310.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Dam Release Whitewater Rafting Rates:** 中的“Group (at least 8 persons): \$ 31.00”可知,8 人以上的团体票价为每人 31 美元,10 个大学生共需要花 310 美元,故 D 项正确。

3. In which aspect is Family Style Whitewater Rafting unique?

A. It allows people to swim in the river.

B. The river water is very clean.

C. It provides a barbeque lunch for free.

D. It offers a free birdwatching activity.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Family Style Whitewater Rafting** 中的“One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)! ”可知,家庭风格的漂流的特别之处是有一个免费的午餐烧烤,故 C 项正确。

##### B

From climbing a human ladder to swimming with the crocodiles (鳄鱼), there's nothing this

Spanish botanist wouldn't do in the name of plants.

Carlos Magdalena the Spanish botanist tried to ignore the "Crocodile Danger" sign as he walked into the lagoon. Based in the hot houses and labs of London's Kew Gardens, he thought he'd spotted a new waterlily species and it wouldn't be the first time he'd risked his life doing his job. His mission is to save the world's most endangered plants. As well as Harrison Ford's film character, the great gardener is also known as the Messiah, the Code Breaker and the Plant Whisperer. He's suffered dehydration in the planet's largest desert, driven through rivers to reach an uncommon vegetation and experienced sickness in the Peruvian Andes, where he climbed a human ladder next to a towering drop to reach a rare flower.

"Directly or indirectly plants provide the air we breathe, medicines, clothes, shelter, food and drink," he says in a firm voice. "Without them we wouldn't be here. It's as simple as that."

Carlos grew up rolling the peaks and valleys of northern Spain in search of natural wonders but quickly learned all was not well.

There are some 400,000 plant species, with many more waiting to be discovered, and it's estimated that a quarter of them are facing dangers of dying out. "They need our help and we should use whatever means possible to ensure their survival."

Often peering into microscope late into night, Carlos marked himself out in the botanic world. Before long he came to understand that plants have a way of talking and to understand their needs, you had to listen to them. His work was daunting (令人却步的) but he eventually triumphed. "It was like scoring the winning goal in a World Cup final," he says.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了西班牙植物学家 Carlos Magdalena 从小就喜欢植物,并且为保护和拯救植物不畏艰险,克服困难并取得重大成就的故事。

4. What does the underlined sentence in Paragraph 2 suggest?

A. He was good at gardening.

B. He played a role in the film.

C. He was famous for his plant-saving work.

D. He got along very well with the other three.

C 句意理解题。根据第二段画线部分上一句 "His mission is to save the world's most endangered plants." 可知,画线句子说明,Carlos Magdalena 这个伟大的植物呵护者不仅被拍成了电影,他作为(植物)救世主、解码人、植物耳语者也一样非常有名,因此他以拯救植物而闻名。故选 C。

5. When he was young, Carlos \_\_\_\_\_.

A. learned all the plants

B. took risks to look for plants

C. watched over different plants

D. displayed intense interest in plants

D 细节理解题。根据第四段的内容可知,Carlos 小时候对植物表现出强烈的兴趣。故选 D。

6. Which words can best describe Carlos?

A. Creative and demanding.

B. Devoted and considerate.

C. Brave and determined.

D. Stubborn and caring.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,Carlos Magdalena 是个非常勇敢的人。根据第三段中的 "firm voice" 和倒数第二段中的 "They need our help and we should use whatever means possible to ensure their survival." 可知,他是个勇敢并有决心的人。故选 C。

7. What will probably be talked about in the next paragraph?

A. His cooperation with other plant-keepers.

B. His scoring a goal in the World Cup final.

C. His future study on preserving endangered plants.

D. His successful examples of saving endangered plants.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 "His work was daunting (令人却步的) but he eventually triumphed. 'It was like scoring the winning goal in a World Cup final,' he says." 可知,Carlos Magdalena 的工作取得了成功,这就像是在世界杯决赛中进球一样令人快乐,所以接下来的文章,作者可能会列举他成功的案例。故选 D。

## C

One of my close friends seems to be distancing himself from me now. I have tried facing him, who just pretends I'm not there, and I've asked for advice from other friends. I feel I'm not good enough. What am I doing wrong to make someone act in such a manner towards me?

If you also suffer from such a situation, you probably have come across a great principle of psychology: the tendency to see reality only through your own feelings and perspective. You will find a much smoother path through the social world if you recognise that not everything that happens to you is about you. In fact, many other possibilities exist. Perhaps your friend is busy with other matters or is dealing internally with problems of his own.

What's troubling you is the double dose (剂量) of negativity about yourself—you assume you've done something wrong and, facing your friend's disturbing behaviour, you're quick to call in bad feelings about yourself. As Eleanor Roosevelt said, "No one can make you feel bad without your permission."

We humans are all imperfect creatures: if there is some aspect of your personality or behavioural style that you feel needs improvement, then you're just like everyone else. Studies show that a large number of people at every age want to better some fundamental aspect of themselves.

The situation you're in calls for inquiry, which is especially helpful in repairing social relationships. If you want to know what's going on, you might approach your friend directly by saying how much you're feeling shut out from your friendship, that you miss it, and that you'd like to know what seems to have gone off the track. You'll get an honest response only by asking straight. And if it turns out that you did do something that wasn't well received, you can decide whether it's something about you that needs fixing.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一种普遍的心理状态:人们总是倾向于用主观的自我感觉来看世界。

8. How does the author introduce the topic of the text?

- A. By making a comparison.
- B. By raising a question.
- C. By providing a definition.
- D. By describing an experience.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,作者通过描述自己的亲身经历来引出主题。故选 D。

9. What's the cause of the author's suffering from the situation?

- A. The improper manners.
- B. The negative thinking.
- C. The ignorance of friends.
- D. The lack of psychology.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的 "What's troubling you is the double dose (剂量) of negativity about yourself" 可知,困扰你的是你消极的想法。故选 B。

10. What can be learned from the studies mentioned in Paragraph 4?

- A. People like to follow others' steps.
- B. It's important to have a good personality.
- C. People desire to improve themselves at all ages.
- D. It takes time and effort to become a perfect person.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的 "Studies show that a large number of people at every age want to better some fundamental aspect of themselves." 可知,各个年龄段的人都渴望提高自己。故选 C。

11. What does the author advise in the last paragraph?

- A. Putting yourself in your friend's shoes.
- B. Caring nothing but your personal affairs.
- C. Coming straight to the point with friends.
- D. Fixing the problems by your own efforts.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的 "If you want to know what's going on, you might approach your friend directly by saying how much you're feeling shut out from your friendship, that you miss it, and that you'd like to know what seems to have gone off the track."

You'll get an honest response only by asking straight.”可知,作者建议和朋友们直入主题。故选 C。

### D

Why do we laugh at movies like *Office Space* or shows like *The Office*? What's so funny about work?

Steve from California shared, “During a meeting, my boss praised our colleague, saying how handsome he is. The team felt awkwardly surprised, until my boss corrected, ‘No—it's great how hands-on he is!’ Everyone laughed, easing the tense atmosphere from the meeting. ‘Well, he is handsome, too!’ I defended jokingly, and we all laughed again!”

Office may seem like a serious place. But, according to a study, introducing some laughter into work life can contribute to our well-being and productivity. In fact, finding humour is one of the practices we teach students in our online course. The funny stories they shared remind us that a little playfulness goes a long way towards a more enjoyable work life.

Laughter serves to create and strengthen social bonds in humans—as well as in our chimp (黑猩猩) ancestors. One evolutionary theory claims that laughter first appeared in these ancestors as a response to signal that they are safe at present and a relief to others after something unexpected occurs. This also has implications in modern times, and it may explain why colleagues who laugh more together tend to enjoy a more safe or comfortable environment and a greater sense of unity among teams.

Feeling comfortable in our work environment can enable us to think openly and take risks—a basis for finding creative solutions at work, contributing to our productivity. According to one study, managers who use humour at work are more likely to reach their unit's target goals. What's more, employees who say that their manager “makes us laugh at ourselves when we are too serious” or “uses humour to take the edge off during stressful

periods” are more likely to trust their manager, and feel a sense of belonging at work.

Of course, humour isn't always called for—particularly if it's a distraction from our tasks or it keeps us from seeing and addressing real problems at work. But in many situations, sharing jokes with colleagues and finding humour in the chaos can make work a little more fun.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了幽默可以改善我们的工作生活,可以提高我们的幸福感和生产力,可以增进人类之间的关系,还可以使员工有归属感。

12. What can we learn from Steve's sharing in the second paragraph?

- A. The meeting was always filled with laughter.
- B. He helped relieve tension during the meeting.
- C. The team was greatly frightened at his words.
- D. The boss thought his colleague quite handsome.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Everyone laughed, easing the tense atmosphere from the meeting.”可知,他在会议期间帮助缓解了紧张气氛。故选 B。

13. What is the original function of laughter among our chimp ancestors?

- A. To create a comfortable atmosphere.
- B. To better their bonds with humans.
- C. To unite other members in the team.
- D. To inform partners of their present safety.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“One evolutionary theory claims that laughter first appeared in these ancestors as a response to signal that they are safe at present and a relief to others after something unexpected occurs.”可知,黑猩猩祖先笑的最初功能是告知伙伴目前的安全状况。故选 D。

14. What is the benefit of a manager's using humour at work?

- A. The company is likely to make more profits.
- B. The company will attract more job applicants.
- C. The employees will feel more included at work.
- D. The employees are more likely to work overtime.

C 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“‘What’s more, employees who say that their manager ‘makes us laugh at ourselves when we are too serious’ or ‘uses humour to take the edge off during stressful periods’ are more likely to trust their manager, and feel a sense of belonging at work.’”可知,经理在工作中使用幽默可以让员工有归属感,感觉自己是工作的一部分。故选 C。

15. What can be the best title for the text?

- A. How to Strengthen Our Sense of Humour
- B. How to Create a Fun Work Environment
- C. How Can Humour Improve Our Work Life
- D. How Important Being a Humorous Worker Is

C 标题归纳题。根据第三段中的“‘But, according to a study, introducing some laughter into work life can contribute to our well-being and productivity.’”,第四段中的“‘Laughter serves to create and strengthen social bonds in humans’”和最后一段中的“‘But in many situations, sharing jokes with colleagues and finding humour in the chaos can make work a little more fun.’”可知,文章主要介绍了幽默如何改善我们的工作生活,所以 C 项最适合作文章标题。故选 C。

## II. 七选五

In the middle of the Pacific Ocean lies the tiny island nation of Tuvalu, the fourth smallest country in the world. This group of four islands and five atolls (islands made from coral) is famous for its sandy beaches and turquoise (蓝绿色的) waters and has long been a popular tourist destination for nearby New Zealanders. However, the nation of Tuvalu is at risk of soon no longer existing; not because of war or political change, but because it will be covered by the rising ocean.

Tuvalu is experiencing the harmful effects of global warming. As global temperatures rise, so does the ocean temperature. Due to the scientific law of “thermal expansion”, when water heats, it gets bigger. 16 Most experts claim that the effects of climate change will make Tuvalu uninhabitable within the next 50 years. Problems are already emerging. As sea levels rise, ocean water containing high levels of salt is travelling further and further

inland destroying the little amount of soil Tuvaluans have to grow crops.

Even before Tuvaluans began to suffer from the effects of climate change, life on Tuvalu was tough.

17 Most of the land on an atoll is rock-hard and arid soil that exists on it is usually thin and poor for growing crops. The nation has always had to import food apart from fish.

More serious than Tuvalu’s lack of home-grown food has been its lack of drinking water. 18 Therefore, Tuvaluans depend almost entirely on rainwater for their water needs. Unfortunately, due to a geographical phenomenon known as La Nina, Tuvalu often suffers from long periods of drought. In autumn 2010, after seven months of no rain, the Prime Minister had to declare a state of emergency not only because of a lack of drinking water, but also because the water left was polluted with cholera (霍乱). 19

Tuvalu’s problems have led some of its 11,000 inhabitants to consider migrating to Australia or New Zealand. 20 They know they’ll have to someday, but for as long as possible, they want to remain and make the world aware of what is happening to their homeland due to climate change.

- A. It was a desperate situation and, but for emergency shipments from New Zealand and Australia, many Tuvaluans would have died.
- B. This is largely due to the geological makeup of atolls.
- C. Unlike normal islands, atolls have no rivers or streams, which means that most of Tuvalu has no groundwater to use for drinking.
- D. Tuvalu’s representatives demanded that nations should take a more responsible role in reducing gas emissions.
- E. Therefore, sea levels are rising and for low-lying Tuvalu, this spells disaster.
- F. However, they are not willing to abandon the land of their forefathers so easily.
- G. And as a member of the United Nations, they are doing just that.

答案:16~20 EBCAF



## III. 完形填空

I hadn't worked since April 2019 due to health issues. But I had no money left, 21 I decided to look for a part-time job.

I had been applying and 22 since July, but was always 23. I felt pretty down.

This past Tuesday evening it was very 24. While I was waiting at a bus stop shaking, I saw a young woman walking up to the bus stop. She had a T-shirt, shorts, and slippers (拖鞋) on. I asked her if she had a 25 or anywhere to go. She shook her head and told me she had lost her apartment because she lost her job.

I opened my bag and took out some 26 so she could buy something to eat. I then took off my jacket and shoes and gave them to her. She looked at me in 27 and thanked me with a hug.

After I got on the bus a miracle of spreading 28 happened. I stepped up to pay the fare (车费) but the bus driver 29 me and smiled, "I saw what you just did and your fare is on me!"

Then a lady on the bus asked, "What can I do for you to give back what I just saw?" I 30 said a paying job would be nice. She asked for my name and 31 and said she would call me the next day.

The next day she called me and said that she had a part-time 32 in her company and wanted me to meet with the manager. I couldn't believe it!

I went for the interview 33 and got a call this afternoon. I will start Monday morning at 9 o'clock! I never 34 to get so much back in 35!

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述作者在自己拮据时,善良地帮助了需要帮助的人,从而得到了很多善意的回报。

21. A. and B. so  
C. unless D. though

B 上文的"But I had no money left"与空后的"I decided to look for a part-time job"是因果关系。因为没钱,所以要找兼职,故用连词 so。故选 B。

22. A. working B. figuring  
C. interviewing D. suffering

C 根据上文的"I decided to look for a part-time job"可知,作者决定找工作,由此推知之后就会申请工作,然后参加面试。故选 C。

23. A. burned up B. held back  
C. left behind D. turned down

D 根据下文的"I felt pretty down."可知,作者心情低落,由此推知作者总是遭到拒绝。故选 D。

24. A. cold B. cool  
C. warm D. hot

A 根据下文的"While I was waiting at a bus stop shaking, I saw a young woman walking up to the bus stop."可知,作者在等公共汽车时一直哆嗦,由此推知天气很冷。故选 A。

25. A. job B. house  
C. quest D. coat

D 根据上文"This past Tuesday evening it was very 24. While I was waiting at a bus stop shaking, I saw a young woman walking up to the bus stop. She had a T-shirt, shorts, and slippers (拖鞋) on."可知,天气非常冷,但等车的年轻女人穿得很单薄,所以作者问她是否有大衣。故选 D。

26. A. dessert B. currency  
C. money D. luggage

C 根据上文的"She shook her head and told me she had lost her apartment because she lost her job."及空后的"so she could buy something to eat"可知,这个年轻女人没有工作,没有住的地方,经济很拮据。所以作者给了这个年轻女人一些钱,让她用来买吃的。故选 C。

27. A. doubt B. surprise  
C. anger D. fear

B 根据上文"I opened my bag and took out some 26 so she could buy something to eat. I then took off my jacket and shoes and gave them to her."可知,作者与这个年轻女人素不相识,但是却善良地给予这个年轻女人钱和衣物。由此推知这个年轻女人对于陌生人的善意感到惊讶。故选 B。

28. A. kindness B. information  
C. comfort D. joy

A 根据下文"I stepped up to pay the fare (车

费) but the bus driver 29 me and smiled, 'I saw what you just did and your fare is on me!'" 可知,司机看到了作者给那个年轻女人钱和衣物,所以司机帮作者买了车票。所以此处表示“善良的传递”。故选 A。

29. A. persuaded B. stopped  
C. admired D. ignored

B 根据下文的“I saw what you just did and your fare is on me!”可知,司机帮作者买了票,所以司机阻止作者付车票钱。故选 B。

30. A. definitely B. bitterly  
C. firmly D. jokingly

D 根据下文“The next day she called me and said that she had a part-time 32 in her company and wanted me to meet with the manager. I couldn't believe it!”可知,第二天,女士打电话给作者,并说给作者介绍了一份兼职工作时,作者简直不敢相信。由此推知作者当时是开玩笑地说自己需要一份工作。故选 D。

31. A. address B. wish  
C. number D. documentary

C 根据空后的“and said she would call me the next day”可知,这位女士承诺第二天给作者打电话,由此推知女士要了作者的电话号码。故选 C。

32. A. position B. boss  
C. career D. agreement

A 根据上文“I 30 said a paying job would be nice.”及下文的“and wanted me to meet with the manager”可知,作者对女士说自己需要一份工作,第二天女士给作者打电话让作者与她的经理见面。由此推知此时女士打电话来是告诉作者,她的公司有一个兼职职位。故选 A。

33. A. carefully B. excitedly  
C. fortunately D. patiently

B 根据上文的“I couldn't believe it!”可知,作者不敢相信女士帮自己找工作,由此推知作者的心情是激动的。故选 B。

34. A. wanted B. illustrated  
C. determined D. expected

D 根据上文的“I couldn't believe it!”可知,作者不敢相信自己能得到面试的机会,由此推知作者没有预想到自己的善意之举能得到这些回报。故

选 D。

35. A. time B. process  
C. return D. turn

C 根据上文“I saw what you just did and your fare is on me!”及“I will start Monday morning at 9 o'clock!”可知,作者因为自己的善意得到了司机为自己买票,一位陌生的女士帮自己找工作,这些都是对作者善意的回报。故选 C。

#### IV. 语法填空

This story took place about seven years ago. But images of that week are still clear in my mind. During that week, we had to face up to a **36. powerful** (power) hurricane (飓风). The fact that I was still little seemed to increase **37. its** (it) force. And I could hear the noise of the wind blowing on the windows, **38. which** were shaking. Outside, everything was flying or moving.

In fact, the hurricane did not cross the island only once, but three times, **39. causing** (cause) more and more damage at each crossing. During the entire week following that event, we were not able **40. to go** (go) out of the house. All able **41. roads** (road) were cut off, and we did not have running water.

Under those conditions, **42. the** hardest part was having no contact **43. with** the rest of my family living around the island. The fear of losing my close friends and relatives was **44. certainly** (certain) hard to stand. We stayed like that for one unpleasant week before everything **45. was fixed** (fix). For me, those seven days were a real nightmare (噩梦).

#### V. 写作

##### 第一节 书面表达

作为一名高二的学生,在你成长的过程中,你的父母一定为你做过许多令你感动的事,请你叙述一件你的母亲或父亲做过的最令你感动的事。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 不能出现真实姓名和学校名称。

##### 参考范文:

As a Senior Grade 1 student, my father has done many things for me, but the one my father did last month moved me most.

After I did badly in my first monthly exam last month, I felt depressed and disappointed. On learning this, my father asked me to have a face-to-face talk with him. First of all, he told me to analyse the causes one by one warm-heartedly instead of scolding me seriously as usual. In addition, he made me feel confident again by pointing out the advantages of me. What is more, he promised me to do whatever he could to help me out of trouble no matter when and where I needed him. How moved I was!

I am sure the talk between my father and me last month will be kept in my mind forever.

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

### A Friend in Need Is a Friend Indeed

Many years ago, I was at a girls' school and our teacher made all the girls in the class sit next to someone different every day. It was great when you got to sit next to one of your dear friends, but very boring when you had to sit next to someone you didn't like. I hated sitting next to Madhuri. I didn't like her because she always fought with me.

On one of the days when my teacher had paired Madhuri and me to sit next to each other for the day, I noticed that she seemed very anxious. I asked her what was wrong. She wasn't very forthcoming to start with, but eventually, after a long time she told me that she had two sisters and one younger brother in her family and that her father couldn't afford to buy schoolbooks for all of them.

My primary school was strict, as was the standard then, and if you didn't have your schoolbooks the teacher would make you leave the class. Madhuri was very anxious that day because she worried that the teacher would tell her to leave the class. When the teacher saw that she didn't have the books, she told Madhuri that she couldn't attend class for a week.

Madhuri was very upset. I felt so bad when I saw her pain that I decided to help her. I went to speak to her and offered to buy the books for her. She refused my offer to help. She had very strong principles and she would never accept things bought by others.

When I got home from school, I told my mum the story. She said that it was good that I had tried to help but I should stop worrying about it because there was nothing more that I could do if she had refused my offer to help. I couldn't stop worrying about it though.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

### 参考范文:

Then I had an idea. My older brother, who had once used the same series of books, graduated from school last year. Why not turn to him for help? Maybe those old books were the solution to the problem. They wouldn't cost anything so Madhuri could accept without any pressure. I went to Mum and my brother immediately. After hearing Madhuri's situation and my plan, my brother was quite willing to help. We sorted out the needed books for Madhuri together very quickly. Looking at the neatly piled books, I felt quite satisfied and delighted but suddenly a concern flashed across my mind, "Would Madhuri mind they are second-hand books?"

The next day, I got up early so that I could go to her house before going to school. Not knowing what would happen and not sure whether she would accept the books or not, I knocked at the door nervously. When the door opened, I could see her surprised expression. Hearing that these books were old books of my brother, she accepted them without hesitation. I also got a weight off my mind. On the way to school, I could see from her face how happy she was. From that day on, something changed and as the day passed and the years moved on, Madhuri and I became best friends.

## 读后续写技能养成

## 动作描写之“头和面”

### 「技能概述」

1. 动作描写之“头和面”:是指对人的头、耳、面、面颊、额头、喉咙等的动作描写,如点头、摇头、低头、抬头、挠头、转头、额头冒汗、面颊抽搐、面部僵硬、喉咙发紧等。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住人“头和面”的动作特点进行描写,也可以使用一些表达心理的词汇辅助描写头和面的动作。

### 「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考 I 卷续写) He raised his head, looking at me with confidence in his eyes. For a moment he hesitated, but the idea of beating himself made him gather all his courage to take my hand. Then I nodded to him, giving him a big bright smile.

找出文中“头和面”的动作描写并写下来。

raised his head; nodded to him; giving him a big bright smile

### 「词句储备」

#### I. 好词积累

1. nod/shake/scratch one's head 点/摇/挠头
2. clear one's head 清醒一下头脑
3. raise/lift one's head 抬起头
4. turn one's head back 转过头
5. stick one's head out 探出头
6. keep one's head down 低下头
7. an oval face 鹅蛋脸
8. a wrinkled face 满是皱纹的脸
9. head for/towards 朝……走去
10. lay one's head on 把头放在……上
11. bury one's head in... 把头埋在……里
12. pull one's head out of 把某人的头从……中拔出来
13. feel one's head spinning 觉得天旋地转
14. hang/drop/lower/bow/bend one's head 低头
15. rest his head on one's shoulder 他把头靠在某人的肩上
16. echo in one's ears 在耳边回响

17. stop one's ears 捂住耳朵;充耳不闻

#### II. 佳句背诵

1. I shook my head and said no, wondering why she asked such a question.  
我摇摇头说没有,不知她为何问这样的问题。
2. Colour rose to her cheeks when she realised she was being watched.  
意识到有人在看她,她顿时涨红了脸。
3. He looked very nervous, with big beads of sweat standing out on his forehead.  
他看上去很紧张,额上冒着一颗颗大汗珠。
4. He went home with the teacher's warning echoing in his ears.  
回家的路上,老师的警告一直在他的耳边回响。
5. They are playing with snow, each with a face red with cold.  
他们在玩雪,个个脸蛋冻得通红。

### 「技能达标」

#### I. 完成句子

1. She lowered her head to watch it curiously.  
她低下头,好奇地看着它。
2. Kitty just shook her head and ran away shyly.  
基蒂只是摇了摇头,害羞地跑开了。
3. Brian nodded his head slightly as he read the note and smiled.  
布莱恩读着纸条,微微点了点头,笑了。
4. He turned his head slowly towards me and wiped his tears.  
他慢慢地把头转向我,擦了擦眼泪。
5. He buried his head in his hands and couldn't help sobbing.  
他双手抱着头,忍不住抽泣起来。

#### II. 用“头和面”的动作描写完成下面的语段

Mary walked slowly to the bus, 1. her head down (头低着), tears in eyes. Her friend John 2. nodded his head (点了点头) and smiled at her. Though she was in a bad mood, she 3. dropped her head (低下头) to hide it and managed a smile. When she got home, she 4. buried her head under the quilt (把头埋在被子下), pretending to be asleep. However, her mother stopped her housework, 5. raising her head (抬起头) with surprise in her eyes. Then Mary rose, sat close to her mother and 6. rested her head on her mother's shoulder (把头靠在她母亲的肩上), weeping.